

# Quantum®

---

---

## **DLT™ 4000 Tape Drive Product Manual**

November 10, 2003  
81-60043-04

Quantum reserves the right to make changes and improvements to its products, without incurring any obligation to incorporate such changes or improvements in units previously sold or shipped. Quantum reserves the right to make changes to this product manual without incurring any obligation to notify recipients of earlier versions of the product manual.

You can request Quantum publications from your Quantum Sales Representative or order them directly from Quantum.

Publication Number: 81-60043-04, November 10, 2003

---

**SERVICE CENTERS**

---

Quantum Service Center  
715 Sycamore Avenue  
Milpitas, California 95035  
Phone (888) 827-3378  
FAX: (800) 4DISKFAX  
BBS: (800) 472-9799

Quantum Asia-Pacific Pte. Ltd.  
50 Tagore Lane #b1-04  
Singapore, 2678  
Phone: (65) 450-9333  
FAX: (65) 452-2544

Quantum Customer Service  
Quantum Ireland, Ltd.  
Finnabair Industrial Park  
Dundalk  
County Louth, Ireland  
Phone: (353) 42-55350  
Fax: (353) 45-55355

Copyright © 1995-2001 by Quantum Corporation. All rights reserved. Printed in U.S.A.

Quantum and the Quantum logo are trademarks of Quantum Corporation, registered in the U.S.A. and other countries. DLTtape and the DLTtape logo are trademarks of Quantum Corporation. Products mentioned herein are for identification purposes only and may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

## USER MANUAL STATEMENTS FOR CLASS A EQUIPMENT (INTEGRATIBLE TAPE SYSTEM)

This equipment generates, uses, and may emit radio frequency energy. The equipment has been type tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device pursuant to Part 15 of FCC rules, which are designed to provide reasonable protection against such radio frequency interference.

Operation of this equipment in a residential area may cause interference in which case the user at his own expense will be required to take whatever measures may be required to correct the interference.

Any modifications to this device - unless expressly approved by the manufacturer - can void the user's authority to operate this equipment under part 15 of the FCC rules.

**Note:** Additional information on the need to interconnect the device with shielded (data) cables or the need for special devices, such as ferrite beads on cables, is required if such means of interference suppression was used in the qualification test for the device. This information will vary from device to device and needs to be obtained from the EMC group or product manager.

### Warning!

This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

### Achtung!

Dieses ist ein Gerät der Funkstörgrenzwertklasse A. In Wohnbereichen können bei Betrieb dieses Gerätes Rundfunkstörungen auftreten, in welchen Fällen der Benutzer für entsprechende Gegenmaßnahmen verantwortlich ist.

### Warning!

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

### Attention!

Ceci est un produit de Classe A. Dans un environnement domestique, ce produit risque de créer des interférences radioélectriques, il appartiendra alors à l'utilisateur de prendre les mesures spécifiques appropriées.

### 警告使用者:

這是甲類的資訊產品，在居住的環境中使用時，可能會造成射頻干擾，在這種情況下，使用者會被要求採取某些適當的對策。

## USER MANUAL STATEMENTS FOR CLASS A EQUIPMENT (continued)

に基づくクラスA情報技術装置です。この装置を家庭環境で使用すると電波妨害を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策を講ずるよう要求されることがあります。

## USER MANUAL STATEMENTS FOR CLASS B EQUIPMENT (TABLETOP VERSION)

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. Any modifications to this device - unless expressly approved by the manufacturer - can void the user's authority to operate this equipment under part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference and (2) This device must accept any interference that may cause undesirable operation.

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

**Note:** Additional information on the need to interconnect the device with shielded (data) cables or the need for special devices, such as ferrite beads on cables, is required if such means of interference suppression was used in the qualification test for the device. This information will vary from device to device and needs to be obtained from the EMC group or product manager.

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.  
Cet appareil numérique de la classe B est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

*USER MANUAL STATEMENTS FOR CLASS B EQUIPMENT (continued)*

警告使用者:

這是甲類的資訊產品，在居住的環境中使用時，可能會造成射頻干擾，在這種情況下，使用者會被要求採取某些適當的對策。

この装置は、情報処理装置等電波障害自主規制協議会（V C C I）の基準に基づくクラスB情報技術装置です。この装置は、家庭環境で使用することを目的としています。この装置がラジオやテレビジョン受信機に近接して使用されると、受信障害を引き起こすことがあります。

取扱説明書に従って正しい取り扱いをして下さい。



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

Revision History.....	xix
About This Manual .....	xxi
 Chapter 1: General Description and Specifications.....	 1-1
1.1 Product Description.....	1-1
1.2 Product Features .....	1-3
1.3 Product Specifications .....	1-3
1.3.1 Physical Specifications .....	1-3
1.3.2 Interface Type.....	1-4
1.3.3 Storage Capacity.....	1-4
1.3.4 Performance Data .....	1-4
1.3.5 Environmental Specifications.....	1-5
1.3.6 Power Requirements.....	1-7
1.3.7 Electromagnetic Emissions.....	1-7
1.3.8 EMI and Safety Certifications.....	1-8
1.3.9 Reliability (Projected) .....	1-8
1.3.10 Acoustic Noise Emissions.....	1-9
1.3.11 Tape Drive Recording Type .....	1-9
1.3.12 DLTtape Recording Media Specifications.....	1-10
 Chapter 2: Hardware Implementation .....	 2-1
2.1 Safety, Handling and Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) Protection .....	2-1
2.1.1 Safety Precautions .....	2-2
2.1.2 Handling .....	2-2
2.1.3 Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) Protection .....	2-3
2.2 Drive Setup .....	2-3
2.2.1 Set the Rackmount Drive SCSI ID.....	2-4
2.2.2 Configure the Rackmount Drive for TERMPWR (Single-Ended Only).....	2-6
2.2.3 Configure the Rackmount Drive for Parity Checking .....	2-7
2.2.4 Configure the Tabletop Drive .....	2-7
2.3 Drive Installation.....	2-8
2.4 Drive Connections .....	2-10
2.4.1 SCSI and Power Connectors (Rackmount).....	2-11
2.4.2 Optional Loader Connector (Rackmount) .....	2-14
2.4.3 Tabletop Drive Connectors.....	2-15
2.5 Drive Controls and Light Emitting Diodes (LEDs).....	2-17
2.5.1 Front Panel Controls and LEDs.....	2-17

2.5.2	Selecting Density.....	2-21
2.6	Power On Self Test (POST).....	2-23
2.7	Troubleshooting.....	2-25
Chapter 3:	SCSI Description.....	3-1
3.1	SCSI Overview .....	3-1
3.2	SCSI Commands.....	3-1
3.3	Signal States .....	3-4
3.3.1	Signal Values .....	3-4
3.3.2	SCSI ID Bits.....	3-6
3.4	SCSI Signals.....	3-6
3.4.1	SCSI Signal Definitions.....	3-6
3.4.2	Signal Bus Timing.....	3-7
3.5	SCSI Bus Phases .....	3-10
3.5.1	BUS FREE Phase .....	3-10
3.5.2	ARBITRATION Phase .....	3-12
3.5.3	SELECTION Phase .....	3-13
3.5.4	RESELECTION Phase .....	3-15
3.5.5	Information Transfer Phases.....	3-17
3.6	SCSI Bus Conditions.....	3-24
3.6.1	Attention Condition.....	3-24
3.6.2	Reset Condition .....	3-25
3.6.3	Queued Unit Attentions.....	3-26
Chapter 4:	Messages.....	4-1
4.1	Message Format .....	4-1
4.2	Supported SCSI Messages.....	4-5
4.2.1	ABORT Message (06h).....	4-5
4.2.2	BUS DEVICE RESET Message (0Ch).....	4-5
4.2.3	COMMAND COMPLETE Message (00h).....	4-5
4.2.4	DISCONNECT Message (04h).....	4-6
4.2.5	IDENTIFY Message (80h - FFh).....	4-7
4.2.6	INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR Message (05h).....	4-8
4.2.7	LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE Message (0Ah).....	4-9
4.2.8	LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE, with Flag Message (0Ah).....	4-9
4.2.9	MESSAGE PARITY ERROR Message (09h).....	4-9
4.2.10	MESSAGE REJECT Message (07h).....	4-9
4.2.11	NO OPERATION Message (08h).....	4-10
4.2.12	RESTORE POINTERS Message (03h).....	4-10
4.2.13	SAVE DATA POINTER Message (02h).....	4-10
4.2.14	SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST Message .....	4-10



Chapter 5: SCSI Commands.....	5-1
5.1 Overview of Command and Status Processing.....	5-1
5.1.1 SCSI Pointers.....	5-3
5.1.2 Command Descriptor Block.....	5-4
5.1.3 Status/Error Reporting .....	5-7
5.1.4 DATA-Phase Command Components.....	5-8
5.1.5 Unit Attention Condition .....	5-11
5.1.6 Behavior At Power-On and SCSI Bus Reset.....	5-11
5.1.7 Data Cache and Tape Write Interaction.....	5-12
5.2 SCSI Command Descriptions.....	5-13
5.3 ERASE Command (19h) .....	5-15
5.4 INQUIRY Command (12h).....	5-17
5.4.1 Standard Inquiry Data Page.....	5-18
5.4.2 Vendor Unique Inquiry Data.....	5-21
5.4.3 Supported Vital Product Data Page (00h).....	5-24
5.5 LOAD UNLOAD Command (1Bh).....	5-27
5.6 LOCATE Command (2Bh).....	5-31
5.7 LOG SELECT Command (4Ch).....	5-33
5.7.1 Log Detection Summary in LOG SELECT Command Descriptor Block .....	5-35
5.7.2 Operation of LOG SELECT.....	5-35
5.7.3 LOG SELECT Page Format .....	5-36
5.7.4 Error Detection Summary in LOG SELECT Pages.....	5-39
5.8 LOG SENSE Command (4Dh).....	5-41
5.8.1 Error Detection Summary in LOG SENSE Command Descriptor Block .....	5-44
5.8.2 Supported Pages Log Page (00h).....	5-45
5.8.3 Read (Page 03h)/Write (Page 02h) Error LOG SENSE Page.....	5-46
5.8.4 Last n Error Events Page (07h) .....	5-49
5.8.5 Read/Write Compression Page (32h).....	5-52
5.8.6 Device Wellness Page (33h).....	5-57
5.8.7 Device Status Page (3Eh) .....	5-60
5.9 MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h / 55h).....	5-63
5.9.1 Mode Parameter List .....	5-65
5.9.2 Read/Write Error Recovery Page (01h) .....	5-72
5.9.3 Disconnect/Reconnect Page .....	5-73
5.9.4 Control Mode Page (0Ah).....	5-77
5.9.5 Data Compression Page (0Fh) .....	5-79
5.9.6 Device Configuration Page (10h).....	5-81
5.9.7 Medium Partition Page (11h).....	5-84
5.9.8 EEPROM Vendor Unique Page (3Eh).....	5-86
5.9.9 Changeable Parameters within MODE SELECT .....	5-93

5.10 MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah).....	5-95
5.10.1 MODE SENSE Data Headers.....	5-98
5.10.2 MODE SENSE Block Descriptors.....	5-100
5.10.3 MODE SENSE Mode Pages.....	5-102
5.11 PREVENT / ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL Command (1Eh).....	5-119
5.12 READ Command (08h).....	5-121
5.13 READ BLOCK LIMITS Command (05h).....	5-125
5.14 READ BUFFER Command (3Ch).....	5-127
5.14.1 Combined Header and Data Mode .....	5-128
5.14.2 Data Mode .....	5-129
5.14.3 Descriptor Mode .....	5-129
5.15 READ POSITION Command (34h).....	5-131
5.16 RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS Command (1Ch).....	5-135
5.17 RELEASE UNIT Command (17h).....	5-137
5.18 REPORT LUNS Command (0Ah).....	5-139
5.19 REQUEST SENSE Command (03h).....	5-141
5.20 RESERVE UNIT Command (16h).....	5-151
5.21 REWIND Command (01h).....	5-153
5.22 SEND DIAGNOSTIC Command (1Dh).....	5-155
5.23 SPACE Command (11h).....	5-161
5.24 TEST UNIT READY Command (00h).....	5-163
5.25 VERIFY Command (13h).....	5-165
5.26 WRITE Command (0Ah).....	5-167
5.27 WRITE BUFFER Command (3Bh).....	5-169
5.27.1 Write Combined Header and Data Mode (000b) .....	5-170
5.27.2 Write Data Mode (010b).....	5-170
5.27.3 Download Microcode Mode (100b).....	5-171
5.27.4 Download Microcode and Save Mode (101b) .....	5-171
5.28 WRITE FILEMARKS Command (10h).....	5-173
Appendix A: Definition of Vendor Unique Sense Data Information .....	A-1
Appendix B: EEPROM-Resident Bugcheck and Event Logs .....	B-1
B.1 EEPROM Packets (Last n Events).....	B-1
B.2 Bugcheck Packets.....	B-1
B.2.1 POST Failure Packets.....	B-2
B.2.2 Event Log Packets.....	B-3
Appendix C: Updating the Firmware.....	C-1
C.1 Overview .....	C-1
C.2 Creating a Firmware Update Tape .....	C-1
C.3 Firmware Update Procedure.....	C-2
C.4 Interpreting the Results of a Firmware Update .....	C-4
Appendix D: The Tape Cartridge .....	D-1
D.1 Tape Cartridge Handling Guidelines .....	D-1
D.2 Tape Cartridge Inspection Procedure.....	D-4

D.3 Tape Cartridge Write-Protect Switch ..... D-8

D.4 Loading a Tape Cartridge ..... D-10

D.5 Unloading a Tape Cartridge..... D-11

D.6 Using a Cleaning Tape Cartridge ..... D-12

Index

---

**Figures**


---

Figure 1-1. Quantum DLT 4000 Tape Drive (Rackmount).....	1-2
Figure 1-2. Quantum DLT 4000 Tape Drive (Tabletop) .....	1-2
Figure 2-1. DLT 4000 SCSI ID Jumper Location (Rackmount Version Shown).....	2-4
Figure 2-2. DLT 4000 TERMPWR and Parity Check Jumper Locations (Rackmount Version Shown) .....	2-6
Figure 2-3. Tabletop (Version 1) Back Panel Controls.....	2-7
Figure 2-4. Tabletop (Version 2) Back Panel Controls.....	2-8
Figure 2-5. Rackmount Drive Mounting Locations – Side and Bottom Views .....	2-9
Figure 2-6. SCSI and Power Cable Connectors (Rackmount Version Shown).....	2-11
Figure 2-7. Loader Connector Block Location (Rackmount Version Shown).....	2-14
Figure 2-8. Tabletop (Version 1) Back Panel Connectors.....	2-15
Figure 2-9. Tabletop (Version 2) Back Panel Connectors.....	2-16
Figure 2-10. DLT 4000 Front Panel.....	2-17
Figure 4-1. Extended Message - Data Format.....	4-4
Figure 4-2. IDENTIFY Message - Data Format.....	4-7
Figure 4-3. SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST Message - Data Format.....	4-11
Figure 5-1. Typical Command Descriptor Block - Data Format .....	5-4
Figure 5-2. Command Descriptor Block Control Field - Data Format .....	5-6
Figure 5-3. ERASE Command Descriptor Block - Data Format.....	5-15
Figure 5-4. INQUIRY Command Descriptor Block - Data Format .....	5-17
Figure 5-5. Standard Inquiry Data Page - Data Format .....	5-19
Figure 5-6. INQUIRY Vendor Unique Bytes Definitions.....	5-22
Figure 5-7. Supported Vital Product Data Pages Page - Data Format .....	5-24
Figure 5-8. Unit Serial Number Page - Data Format.....	5-25
Figure 5-9. Firmware Build Information Page - Data Format .....	5-26
Figure 5-10. LOAD UNLOAD Command Descriptor Block - Data Format.....	5-28
Figure 5-11. LOCATE Command Descriptor Block - Data Format.....	5-31
Figure 5-12. LOG SELECT Command Descriptor Block - Data Format.....	5-33
Figure 5-13. LOG SELECT Log Page Header Format .....	5-36
Figure 5-14. LOG SELECT Log Parameters Format.....	5-37
Figure 5-15. LOG SENSE Command Descriptor Block - Data Format.....	5-41
Figure 5-16. Supported Pages Page - Data Format.....	5-45
Figure 5-17. Read/Write Error LOG SENSE Header Format.....	5-46
Figure 5-18. Log Parameters Format for Read/Write Error LOG SENSE Page.....	5-47
Figure 5-19. Last n Error Events LOG SENSE Header Format.....	5-50
Figure 5-20. Log Parameters Format for Last n Error Events LOG SENSE Page .....	5-51
Figure 5-21. Read/Write Compression Ratio LOG SENSE Header Format.....	5-52
Figure 5-22. Log Parameters Format for Read / Write Compression Ratio LOG SENSE Page (Parameter Codes 00h and 01h) .....	5-53

Figure 5-23. Log Parameters Format for Read / Write Compression Ratio LOG SENSE Page (Parameter Codes 02h through 09h).....	5-54
Figure 5-24. Device Wellness LOG SENSE Header Format .....	5-57
Figure 5-25. Log Parameters Format for Device Wellness LOG SENSE Page (Parameters 0000h – 000Fh) .....	5-58
Figure 5-26. Device Status LOG SENSE Header Format.....	5-60
Figure 5-27. Log Parameters Format for Device Status LOG SENSE Page (Parameters 0000h, 0001h, or 0002h) .....	5-61
Figure 5-28. Log Parameters Format for Device Status LOG SENSE Page Parameter 0001h (Cleaning Related) .....	5-62
Figure 5-29. MODE SELECT (6) and (10) Command Descriptor Blocks - Data Format .....	5-64
Figure 5-30. MODE SELECT Mode Parameter List - Data Format.....	5-65
Figure 5-31. MODE SELECT Mode Parameter Header - Data Format.....	5-66
Figure 5-32. MODE SELECT Mode Parameter Block Descriptor - Data Format.....	5-68
Figure 5-33. MODE SELECT Page Descriptor – Page Format .....	5-70
Figure 5-34. Error Recovery Page - Data Format.....	5-72
Figure 5-35. Disconnect / Reconnect Page - Data Format.....	5-74
Figure 5-36. Control Mode Page Format Descriptor - Data Format.....	5-77
Figure 5-37. Data Compression Page Format Descriptor - Data Format.....	5-79
Figure 5-38. Device Configuration Page - Data Format.....	5-81
Figure 5-39. Medium Partition Page Format Descriptor - Data Format.....	5-84
Figure 5-40. EEPROM Vendor Unique Page - Data Format .....	5-86
Figure 5-41. EEPROM Vendor Unique Page “Vendor ID” Example - Data Format.....	5-91
Figure 5-42. EEPROM Vendor Unique Page “Forced Density” Example - Data Format ...	5-92
Figure 5-43. MODE SENSE (6) Command Descriptor Block - Data Format.....	5-95
Figure 5-44. MODE SENSE (10) Command Descriptor Block - Data Format .....	5-96
Figure 5-45. MODE SENSE (6) Data Header - Data Format .....	5-98
Figure 5-46. MODE SENSE (10) Data Header - Data Format.....	5-98
Figure 5-47. MODE SENSE (6) Block Descriptor - Data Format .....	5-100
Figure 5-48. MODE SENSE Page Descriptor - Data Format .....	5-102
Figure 5-49. Read / Write Error Recovery Page - Data Format.....	5-104
Figure 5-50. Disconnect / Reconnect Page - Data Format.....	5-106
Figure 5-51. Control Mode Page - Data Format .....	5-108
Figure 5-52. Data Compression Page - Data Format .....	5-110
Figure 5-53. Device Configuration Page - Data Format.....	5-112
Figure 5-54. Medium Partition Page - Data Format .....	5-115
Figure 5-55. PREVENT / ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL Command Descriptor Block - Data Format .....	5-119
Figure 5-56. READ Command Descriptor Block - Data Format .....	5-121
Figure 5-57. READ BLOCK LIMITS Command Descriptor Block - Data Format .....	5-125
Figure 5-58. READ BLOCK LIMITS Data - Data Format .....	5-126
Figure 5-59. READ BUFFER Command Descriptor Block - Data Format.....	5-127
Figure 5-60. READ BUFFER Header - Data Format .....	5-128

Figure 5-61. READ BUFFER Descriptor - Data Format.....	5-129
Figure 5-62. READ POSITION Command Descriptor Block - Data Format .....	5-131
Figure 5-63. READ POSITION - Data Format.....	5-132
Figure 5-64. RECEIVE DIAGNOSTICS RESULTS Command Descriptor Block – Data Format .....	5-135
Figure 5-65. RECEIVE DIAGNOSTICS RESULTS - Data Format .....	5-136
Figure 5-66. RELEASE UNIT Command Descriptor Block - Data Format.....	5-137
Figure 5-67. REPORT LUNS Command Descriptor Block - Data Format .....	5-139
Figure 5-68. LUN Reporting Parameter List — Data Format.....	5-140
Figure 5-69. REQUEST SENSE Command Descriptor Block - Data Format.....	5-141
Figure 5-70. REQUEST SENSE - Data Format.....	5-143
Figure 5-71. RESERVE UNIT Command Descriptor Block - Data Format.....	5-151
Figure 5-72. REWIND Command Descriptor Block - Data Format.....	5-153
Figure 5-73. SEND DIAGNOSTIC Command Descriptor Block - Data Format.....	5-155
Figure 5-74. SEND DIAGNOSTIC Parameter List - Data Format .....	5-157
Figure 5-75. SPACE Command Descriptor Block - Data Format.....	5-161
Figure 5-76. TEST UNIT READY Command Descriptor Block - Data Format.....	5-163
Figure 5-77. VERIFY Command Descriptor Block - Data Format.....	5-165
Figure 5-78. WRITE Command Descriptor Block - Data Format .....	5-167
Figure 5-79. WRITE BUFFER Command Descriptor Block - Data Format.....	5-169
Figure 5-80. WRITE FILEMARKS Command Descriptor Block - Data Format .....	5-173
Figure A-1. Internal Status Bits.....	A-4
Figure B-1. Directory Failure Event Package – Data Format.....	B-5
Figure D-1. Location of the Two Reel Lock Tabs on the DLTtape Cartridge .....	D-4
Figure D-2. Location of Reel Lock Opening and Spring-Loaded Hub on Bottom of DLTtape Cartridge .....	D-5
Figure D-3. Opening the Door on a DLTtape Cartridge Showing Tape Leader Loop in its Correct Position .....	D-6
Figure D-4. Three Examples of Tape Cartridges with Damage Visible During Visual Inspection.....	D-7
Figure D-5. Write-Protect Switch on Tape Cartridge.....	D-8

---

**Tables**


---

Table 1-1.	DLT 4000 Physical Dimensions.....	1-3
Table 1-2.	DLT 4000 Storage Capacity.....	1-4
Table 1-3.	DLT 4000 Performance Data .....	1-4
Table 1-4.	DLT 4000 Environmental Specifications .....	1-5
Table 1-5.	DLT 4000 Non-Operating Shock Specifications .....	1-6
Table 1-6.	DLT 4000 Non-Operating Vibration Specifications.....	1-6
Table 1-7.	DLT 4000 Power Requirements .....	1-7
Table 1-8.	EMI Emission Certificates.....	1-8
Table 1-9.	Safety Certifications.....	1-8
Table 1-10.	Acoustic Noise Emissions, Nominal (English) .....	1-9
Table 1-11.	Acoustic Noise Emissions for German Noise Declaration Law.....	1-9
Table 1-12.	DLTtape Media Specifications.....	1-10
Table 2-1.	SCSI ID Address Selections.....	2-5
Table 2-2.	Single-Ended SCSI Pin Assignment .....	2-12
Table 2-3.	Differential SCSI Pin Assignment.....	2-13
Table 2-4.	4-Pin Power Connector Pin Assignment .....	2-14
Table 2-5.	LED Functionality .....	2-18
Table 2-6.	Density LED Functionality .....	2-19
Table 2-7.	Control Functionality .....	2-20
Table 2-8.	LED Activity During Density Selection.....	2-23
Table 2-9.	POST/Media Ready Activity .....	2-24
Table 2-10.	Tape Drive States Following Initialization .....	2-24
Table 2-11.	Troubleshooting Chart.....	2-25
Table 3-1.	Implemented ANSI SCSI-2 Commands.....	3-2
Table 3-2.	Signal Sources.....	3-5
Table 3-3.	SCSI-2 Bus Signal Definitions.....	3-6
Table 3-4.	SCSI Bus Timing Values.....	3-8
Table 3-5.	Information Transfer Phases.....	3-19
Table 3-6.	Status Bytes.....	3-23
Table 3-7.	Drive MESSAGE OUT Phase Response .....	3-25
Table 4-1.	Message Format .....	4-2
Table 4-2.	Supported Messages.....	4-3
Table 4-3.	Extended Message - Field Description .....	4-4
Table 4-4.	Drive Response to DISCONNECT Message .....	4-6
Table 4-5.	IDENTIFY Message - Field Description.....	4-7
Table 4-6.	Drive Response to INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR Message .....	4-8
Table 5-1.	Supported SCSI Commands.....	5-1
Table 5-2.	Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions.....	5-5

Table 5-3.	Command Descriptor Block Control Field - Field Descriptions.....	5-6
Table 5-4.	Status Codes .....	5-8
Table 5-5.	Length Field Name Units .....	5-9
Table 5-6.	DATA-Phase Command Contents.....	5-9
Table 5-7.	ERASE Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions.....	5-16
Table 5-8.	INQUIRY Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions.....	5-18
Table 5-9.	Vital Product Data - Page Codes.....	5-18
Table 5-10.	Standard Inquiry Data Page - Field Descriptions.....	5-20
Table 5-11.	Vendor Unique Inquiry Data Page – Field Descriptions.....	5-23
Table 5-12.	Unit Serial Number Page - Field Descriptions.....	5-25
Table 5-13.	Firmware Build Information Page - Field Descriptions.....	5-26
Table 5-14.	LOAD UNLOAD Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions.....	5-29
Table 5-15.	LOCATE Command Descriptor Block – Field Descriptions.....	5-32
Table 5-16.	LOG SELECT Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions.....	5-34
Table 5-17.	LOG SELECT Log Page Header Field Descriptions.....	5-36
Table 5-18.	LOG SELECT Log Parameters Field Descriptions.....	5-37
Table 5-19.	LOG SENSE Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions.....	5-42
Table 5-20.	Read / Write Error LOG SENSE Header Field Descriptions.....	5-46
Table 5-21.	Log Parameters for Read / Write Error LOG SENSE Page Field Descriptions.....	5-47
Table 5-22.	Last n Error Events LOG SENSE Header Field Descriptions.....	5-50
Table 5-23.	Log Parameters for Last n Error Events LOG SENSE Page Field Descriptions.....	5-51
Table 5-24.	Read / Write Compression Ratio LOG SENSE Header Field Descriptions.....	5-52
Table 5-25.	Log Parameters for Read / Write Compression Ratio LOG SENSE Page Field Descriptions (Parameter Codes 00h and 01h).....	5-53
Table 5-26.	Log Parameters for Read / Write Compression Ratio LOG SENSE Page Field Descriptions (Parameter Codes 02h through 09h).....	5-54
Table 5-27.	Device Wellness LOG SENSE Header Field Descriptions.....	5-57
Table 5-28.	Log Parameters for Device Wellness LOG SENSE Page Field Descriptions ...	5-59
Table 5-29.	Device Status LOG SENSE Header Field Descriptions.....	5-60
Table 5-30.	Log Parameters for Device Status LOG SENSE Page Field Descriptions.....	5-61
Table 5-31.	Log Parameters for Device Wellness LOG SENSE Parameter 0001h (Cleaning Related) Field Descriptions.....	5-62
Table 5-32.	MODE SELECT (6) (10) Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions.....	5-65
Table 5-33.	MODE SELECT Mode Parameter List - Field Definitions.....	5-66
Table 5-34.	MODE SELECT Mode Parameter Header - Field Descriptions.....	5-67
Table 5-35.	MODE SELECT Mode Parameter Block Descriptor - Field Descriptions.....	5-69
Table 5-36.	MODE SELECT Page Descriptor - Field Descriptions.....	5-71
Table 5-37.	Error Recovery Page - Field Descriptions.....	5-73
Table 5-38.	Disconnect / Reconnect Page - Field Descriptions.....	5-75
Table 5-39.	Control Mode Page Descriptor – Field Descriptions.....	5-78



Table 5-40. Data Compression Page Descriptor – Field Descriptions .....	5-80
Table 5-41. Device Configuration Page - Field Descriptions.....	5-82
Table 5-42. Medium Partition Page Descriptor - Field Descriptions.....	5-85
Table 5-43. EEPROM Vendor Unique Page Parameters .....	5-86
Table 5-44. Changeable Parameters within MODE SELECT.....	5-93
Table 5-45. MODE SENSE Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions.....	5-97
Table 5-46. MODE SENSE Data Header - Field Descriptions.....	5-99
Table 5-47. MODE SENSE Block Descriptor - Field Descriptions.....	5-101
Table 5-48. MODE SENSE Page Descriptor - Field Descriptions.....	5-103
Table 5-49. Read / Write Error Recovery Page - Field Descriptions.....	5-105
Table 5-50. Disconnect / Reconnect Error Recovery Page - Field Descriptions.....	5-107
Table 5-51. Control Mode Page – Field Descriptions.....	5-109
Table 5-52. Data Compression Page - Field Description.....	5-111
Table 5-53. Device Configuration Page - Field Descriptions.....	5-113
Table 5-54. Medium Partition Page - Field Descriptions.....	5-116
Table 5-55. PREVENT/ ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL Command Descriptor Block – Field Descriptions.....	5-120
Table 5-56. READ Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions.....	5-122
Table 5-57. READ BLOCK LIMITS Data - Field Descriptions.....	5-126
Table 5-58. READ BUFFER Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions.....	5-128
Table 5-59. READ BUFFER Header - Field Descriptions.....	5-129
Table 5-60. READ POSITION Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions.....	5-131
Table 5-61. READ POSITION Data - Field Description.....	5-133
Table 5-62. RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS Command Data – Field Descriptions.....	5-135
Table 5-63. RELEASE UNIT Command Data - Field Descriptions.....	5-138
Table 5-64. REPORT LUNS Command Data - Field Descriptions.....	5-139
Table 5-65. REQUEST SENSE Command Data - Field Descriptions.....	5-141
Table 5-66. REQUEST SENSE Data - Field Descriptions.....	5-143
Table 5-67. Supported Sense Keys .....	5-146
Table 5-68. Supported ASC / ASCQ in Hex.....	5-147
Table 5-69. RESERVE UNIT Command - Field Descriptions.....	5-151
Table 5-70. REWIND Command Data - Field Descriptions.....	5-153
Table 5-71. SEND DIAGNOSTIC Command - Field Descriptions.....	5-155
Table 5-72. SEND DIAGNOSTIC CDB Bits Selftest, DevOfI, and UnitOfI.....	5-157
Table 5-73. SEND DIAGNOSTIC Parameter List – Field Descriptions.....	5-158
Table 5-74. Sense Keys Used for SEND DIAGNOSTIC .....	5-159

Table 5-75. ASC / ASCQ for SEND DIAGNOSTIC .....	5-159
Table 5-76. SPACE Command Data - Field Descriptions.....	5-161
Table 5-77. VERIFY Command Data - Field Descriptions.....	5-166
Table 5-78. WRITE Command Data - Field Descriptions.....	5-168
Table 5-79. WRITE BUFFER Command Data - Field Descriptions.....	5-170
Table 5-80. WRITE FILEMARKS Command Data - Field Descriptions.....	5-174
Table A-1. Internal Status Codes.....	A-1
Table A-2. Internal Status Bit Flags.....	A-4
Table B-1. Bugcheck Packet Error Codes (Bytes 9 - 10) .....	B-2
Table B-2. Event Log Error Codes (Bytes 9 – 10).....	B-3
Table B-3. Directory Failure Event Package – Field Descriptions .....	B-5
Table C-1. Block Size Used for Firmware Update Type.....	C-2
Table C-2. Results of Firmware Update .....	C-5
Table D-1. Write-Protect Switch Positions.....	D-9
Table D-2. When to Use a Cleaning Tape Cartridge .....	D-12

## REVISION HISTORY

*This Revision History provides a concise publications record of this manual. It lists the manual's revision levels, release dates, and a summary of changes for each release.*

Manual Number - Revision Level	Date of Release	Summary of Changes
81-108336-01	May 5, 1995	Original issue
81-108336-02		Caution added for unloading a tape cartridge
81- 60043- 01	March 10, 1996	Part number 81-108336-02 obsoleted Manual-wide, trademark copyrights, and other changes. Fast Data Transfer Rate correction. Figure 2-1 and 3-6 corrected. Section E added to POST testing. Table 3-2 corrected. Description of tape cartridge corrected. Notes added to Loading a Cartridge section. Added a caution to Unloading a Cartridge section. Chapter 4 rewritten. POST description updated. Figure 5-2 updated, page 5-6. Table 5-1 updated, page 5-11. Table 5-2 updated, page 5-14. Table 7-1 added, page 7-4. Table 7-1 consolidated, page 7-8. Caution message added, page 7-9. Table 8-1 modified, page 8-8. Table 8-2 modified, page 8-15. Table 8-6 modified, page 8-21. Product Family description and table added, page 8-22. Density Code updated, page 8-49. Table 8-3, additions and modifications, pages 8-65 and 8-67. Tables A-1, A-5, A-8, A-9, A-10, A-12, A-14, A-16, A-17, A-20, and A30 changed (pages A-3, A-1, A-13, A-14, A-15, A-17, A-18, A-23).

Manual Number - Revision Level	Date of Release	Summary of Changes
81-60043-02	April 08, 1999	Entire manual rewritten to conform to corporate standard for product manuals. Manual updated to include new version of the DLT4000 tape drive (Chapters 1 and 2); SCSI command updates (Chapter 5); consolidation of Request Sense ASC/ASCQ codes into one complete table (Chapter 5) and tape cartridge additions (Appendix D).
81-60043-03	September 18, 2000	Revised.  Chapter 2: Pinout tables corrected for 50-pin single-ended and differential SCSI connector signals (Tables 2-2 and 2-3).  Chapter 5: Corrections made to LOG SENSE command's DEVICE STATUS page (Log Parameter Format and TSD, CInQ, and CInR bits).  Appendix A: Changed field descriptions in Table A-2.
81-60043-04	April 4, 2001	Updated corporate address and reader comment address.
81-60043-04 A02	November 10, 2003	Changed Service Center contact number from (800) 826-8022 to (888) 827-3378 per ECO C008218.

## ABOUT THIS MANUAL

---

*"About this Manual" outlines the scope and contents of this manual. It contains information about the intended audience, purpose of the manual, document organization, and document conventions.*

### AUDIENCE

This manual is written for original equipment manufacturers (OEMs) that are integrating the Quantum DLT™4000 tape drive and into a system or subsystem. Its primary audience is the OEM technical staff that makes tape drive purchase and configuration decisions, and system integrators that are responsible for the SCSI interface. Additionally, the manual can be used by technically astute end-users for installation and operation of the tape drive, although that is a secondary audience.

### PURPOSE

This manual describes the rackmount and tabletop versions of the DLT 4000 tape drive. It is intended to provide the information necessary to integrate the tape drive into a computer system or subsystem.

### DOCUMENT ORGANIZATION

This product manual contains five chapters, a number of appendixes of related useful information, and an index. It includes an overview of the Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) and detailed descriptions of the messages and SCSI commands as used by the tape drive. The manual is organized as follows:

#### **Chapter 1      General Description and Specifications**

This chapter contains a brief description of and specifications for the drive.

## **Chapter 2      Hardware Implementation**

This chapter contains configuration and installation information for the tape drive, descriptions of the drive controls and LEDs, and information on running the self-test.

## **Chapter 3      SCSI Description**

This chapter provides a detailed description of the logical interfaces of the tape drive. It describes the products' compliance with the ANSI SCSI-2 specification. The drive's many optional features are described here and throughout the manual.

## **Chapter 4      Messages**

This chapter provides a list and description of most messages supported by the tape drive. The SCSI message system allows communication between SCSI initiators and SCSI targets (the tape drive, in this case) for interface management and for command elaboration and qualification.

## **Chapter 5      SCSI Commands**

This chapter describes in detail each command supported by the tape drive. The SCSI command system enables an initiator to direct a tape drive to perform a wide range of operational and diagnostic functions. This chapter also provides sense key information for the REQUEST SENSE SCSI command.

## **Appendix A    Definition of Vendor Unique Sense Data Information**

Appendix A provides a list of internal status codes related to the REQUEST SENSE SCSI command.

## **Appendix B    EEPROM-Resident Bugcheck and Event Logs**

Appendix B provides an explanation of the error and event logs stored in semi-permanent, non-volatile memory.

## **Appendix C    Updating the Firmware**

Appendix C provides a step-by-step procedure for updating a tape drive's PCBA controller-resident firmware.

## Appendix D The Tape Cartridge

Appendix D provides tape cartridge handling and inspection procedures, information on the write-protect switch, how to load and unload a tape cartridge, and how to use a cleaning tape cartridge.

### CONVENTIONS

This manual uses the following conventions to designate specific elements:

Element	Convention	Example
Commands	Uppercase (unless case-sensitive)	FORMAT UNIT
Messages	Uppercase	INVALID PRODUCT NUMBER
Hexadecimal Notation	Number followed by lowercase <i>h</i>	25h
Binary Notation	Number followed by lowercase <i>b</i>	101b
Decimal Notation	Number without suffix	512
Acronyms	Uppercase	POST
Abbreviations	Lowercase, except where standard usage requires uppercase	Mb (megabits) MB (megabytes)

### READER COMMENTS

Quantum is committed to providing the best products and service. Our manuals are important components of our products. We encourage your comments, suggestions, and corrections for this manual. Please send all comments to:

Quantum Technical Publications  
4001 Discovery Drive, Suite 1100  
Boulder, CO 80303





# GENERAL DESCRIPTION AND SPECIFICATIONS

---

*This chapter provides a description and gives specifications for the Quantum DLT™ 4000 Tape Drive.*

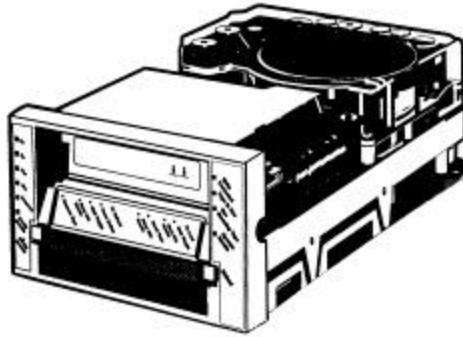
### 1.1 PRODUCT DESCRIPTION

The Quantum DLT™ 4000 tape drive is a high-performance, high-capacity, streaming cartridge tape product designed for efficient data back-up for midrange and high-end computing systems. With Quantum's DLT advanced linear recording technology and a precision tape guide system, the drive is ideally suited for high-end workstation, server, and network backup requirements.

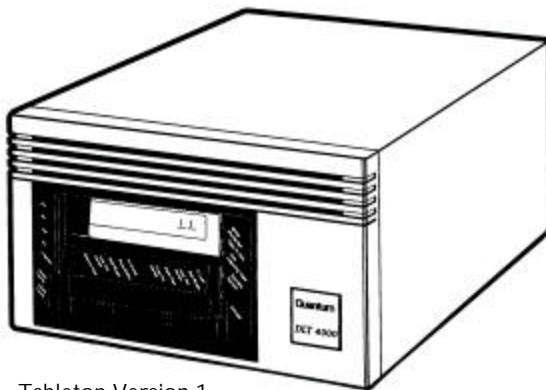
Using data compression, the DLT 4000 tape drive features a formatted capacity of 40.0 GB\* and a sustained user data transfer rate of 3.0 MB/second\* (native capacity is 20.0 GB; native data transfer rate is 1.5 MB/second).

The device is an extended-length, 5.25-inch form factor, half-inch cartridge tape drive. The design includes a two-channel read/write head, Lempel-Ziv (LZ) high-efficiency data compression, and tape mark directory to maximize data throughput and minimize data access time.

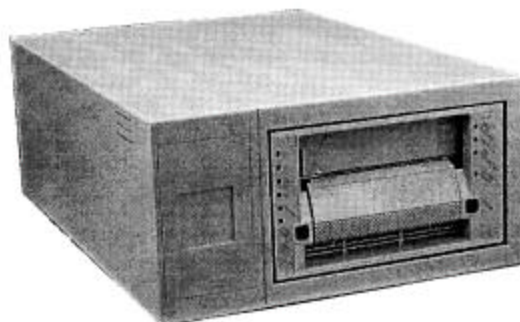
The tape drive is available in rackmount (Figure 1-1) or tabletop (Figure 1-2) form. The tabletop versions of the drive are packaged in a housing that includes its own cooling fan and power supply, requiring ac power.



*Figure 1-1 Quantum DLT 4000 Tape Drive (Rackmount)*



Tabletop Version 1



Tabletop Version 2

*Figure 1-2 Quantum DLT 4000 Tape Drive (Tabletop)*

## 1.2 PRODUCT FEATURES

The DLT 4000 tape drive offers the following product features:

- 20.0 GB Native, 40.0 GB Compressed Capacity (Formatted capacity assuming a 2:1 data compression ratio. Note that actual compression ratio depends on the type of data, SCSI bus limitations, and system configuration.)
- Superior Error Detection and Correction
- Extensive Embedded Diagnostic/Self-Test Software
- Tape-Loadable Firmware

## 1.3 PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

The following subsections contain full specifications for the Quantum DLT 4000 tape drive. Specifications for the DLTtape™ tape media cartridges are also included.

### 1.3.1 Physical Specifications

The following table provides physical dimensions for the DLT 4000.

*Table 1–1 DLT 4000 Physical Dimensions*

Dimension	Rackmount	Tabletop (Version 1)	Tabletop (Version 2)
Height	3.25 in. (8.26 cm) without front bezel; 3.40 in (8.64 cm) with front bezel.	5.77 in. (14.66 cm)	4.88 in. (12.40 cm)
Width	5.70 in. (14.48 cm) behind front bezel; 5.84 in (14.83 cm) with front bezel.	9.25 in. (23.50 cm)	9.06 in. (23.01 cm)
Depth	9.00 in. (22.86 cm) measured from back of front bezel; 9.60 in. (24.38 cm) including front bezel	13.08 in. (33.22 cm)	12.60 in. (32.00 cm)
Typical Weight:	6 lb., 7 oz (2.9 kg)	(14 lb., 9 oz) 6.63 kg	
Note: Mounting hole pattern for the bottom and sides of the drive is industry standard.			

### 1.3.2 Interface Type

DLT 4000 tape drives are available with narrow SCSI-2 fast single-ended or differential high voltage interfaces.

### 1.3.3 Storage Capacity

The following table provides the ranges of capacity (native and compressed) for the tape drive, depending on which DLTtape cartridge is used.

*Table 1-2 DLT 4000 Storage Capacity*

<b>DLTtape Cartridge (Length of Medium)</b>	<b>Native Storage Capacity</b>	<b>Compressed Storage Capacity</b>
DLTtape IV (extended 1780 foot tape)	20.0 GB User Data	40.0 GB User Data (compressed 2:1)
DLTtape IIIxt (extended 1780 foot tape)	15.0 GB User Data	30.0 GB User Data (compressed 2:1)
DLTtape III (standard 1167 foot tape)	10.0 GB User Data	20.0 GB User Data (compressed 2:1)

Note: A compression factor of 2:1 can be attained, depending on the data type and subject to the limitations of the SCSI bus design and the configuration of the system in which the tape drive is installed.

### 1.3.4 Performance Data

The following table provides performance data for the DLT 4000 tape drive.

*Table 1-3 DLT 4000 Performance Data*

<b>Feature</b>	<b>Description</b>
Transfer Rate, User Native	1.5 MB/second 2.5
Transfer Rate, Raw Native	MB/second More
Transfer Rate, Compressed *	than 3.0 MB/second maximum write, 10 MBburst mode; More than 2.5 MB/second maximum read, 10 MBburst mode
Error Rates	Recoverable READ Error Rate = 1 in $1 \times 10^7$ Recoverable WRITE Error Rate = 1 in $1 \times 10^6$ Uncorrected Error Rate = 1 in $1 \times 10^{17}$ bits read Undetected Error Rate = 1 in $1 \times 10^{27}$ bits read

\* = Depending on data type and SCSI bus limitations/system configuration.

Note that data is typical; times may be longer if error recovery time is needed.

Table 1-3 DLT 4000 Performance Data (continued)

Feature	Description
Tracks	128; 64 pairs
Linear Bit Density	81,600 bpi per track
READ / WRITE Tape Speed	98 inches/second
Rewind Tape Speed	150 inches/second
Linear Search Tape Speed	150 inches/second
Average Rewind Time	70 seconds
Maximum Rewind Time	140 seconds
Average Access Time (from BOT)	45 seconds
Maximum Access Time (from BOT)	90 seconds
Load to BOT (typical)	48 seconds - previously written (slightly longer if using a blank tape)
Load to BOT (max time using V120 firmware or greater)	5.2 minutes with blank tape that fails calibration (time includes calibration retries)
Unload from BOT	17 seconds
Nominal Tape Tension	3.0 +/- 1 oz when stationary; 4.7 +/- 1 oz at operating speed

\* = Depending on data type and SCSI bus limitations/system configuration

Note that data is typical; times may be longer if error recovery time is needed.

### 1.3.5 Environmental Specifications

The following table lists operating and non-operating environmental specifications for the DLT 4000 tape drive.

Table 1-4 DLT 4000 Environmental Specifications

Specification	Operating Limits	Non-Operating Limits (Power On; No Tape Loaded)
Wet Bulb Temperature	25°C (77°F)	25°C (77°F)
Dry Bulb Temperature Range	10°C to 40°C (50°F to 104°F)	-40°C to 66°C (-40°F to 151°F)
Temperature Gradient	11°C (52°F) /hour (across range)	15°C (59°F) /hour (across range)
Temperature Shock	10°C (50°F) (over two minutes)	15°C (59°F) (over two minutes)
Relative Humidity	20 to 80% (noncondensing)	10 to 95% (noncondensing)
Humidity Gradient	10% / hour	10% / hour

Table 1-4 DLT 4000 Environmental Specifications (continued)

Specification	Operating Limits	Non-Operating Limits (Power On; No Tape Loaded)
Altitude	Normal pressure from -500 feet to 30,000 feet	
Airflow Velocity	125 linear feet per minute measured directly in front of the front bezel	
Shock	5 G peak, half-sine; 11 ms duration; 10 G each direction of each axis, 35 sec between shocks, 60 shocks total; 3 axes	See Table 1-5
Vibration	5 to 500 Hz @ 0.25 G; sweep rate = 1 octave per minute	See Table 1-6

Table 1-5 DLT 4000 Non-Operating Shock Specifications

Description	Rackmount and Tabletop
Shock (Unpackaged)	40 G, 10 ms, square wave; 140 G, 2 ms, half-sine; X,Y,Z axes, twice in each axis, total of 6 shocks.
Shock (Packaged)	Drop: 42 inches (items < 20.0 lbs.) 16 drops total

Table 1-6 DLT 4000 Non-Operating Vibration Specifications

Description	Rackmount and Tabletop	
Sine (Unpackaged)	1-500-10 Hz; 1 G acceleration level; X,Y,Z axes, sweep rate = 1/2 octave/minute	
Random (Unpackaged)	5-500 Hz; 2 G acceleration level; X,Y,Z axes, sweep rate = 60 min/axis	
Random (Packaged)		
Power Spectral Density (Vertical)	5 to 10 Hz	0.003 G <sup>2</sup> /Hz @ 5, to 0.020 @ 10
	10 to 50 Hz	Flat @ 0.020 G <sup>2</sup> /Hz
	50 to 300 Hz	0.020 G <sup>2</sup> /Hz @ 50 with 8 dB/octave rolloff

Table 1–6 DLT 4000 Non-Operating Vibration Specifications (continued)

Description	Rackmount and Tabletop	
Power Spectral Density (Horizontal)	5 to 10 Hz	0.0011 G <sup>2</sup> /Hz @ 5, to 0.007 @ 10
	10 to 50 Hz	Flat @ 0.007 G <sup>2</sup> /Hz
	50 to 200 Hz	0.007 G <sup>2</sup> /Hz @ 50 with 8 dB/octave rolloff
	Each of the X, Y, and Z axes for one hour (3 hours total)	

### 1.3.6 Power Requirements

The following table provides the applicable power requirements for rackmount and tabletop versions of the DLT 4000 tape drive. Note that the tabletop DLT 4000 requires ac power.

Table 1–7 DLT 4000 Power Requirements

Requirement	Rackmount	Tabletop
Electrical Rating (Auto Ranging)	Not Applicable	100 to 240 VAC
Power Requirements	25 W, steady state; 27 W, maximum	50 W, maximum
Power Consumption:		
+5 V (±5%) bus *	2.0 A, steady state; 2.5 A, maximum	Not applicable
+12 V (±5%) bus *	0.8 A, steady state; 1.5 A, maximum	Not applicable
* = Voltage measured at the power bus connector pins.		

### 1.3.7 Electromagnetic Emissions

The rackmount version of the drive complies with FCC Class A in a standard enclosure; the tabletop version complies with the FCC Class B limits.

### 1.3.8 EMI and Safety Certifications

Table 1–8 provides the certifications held by the rackmount and tabletop versions of the tape drive. Table 1–9 provides the safety certification held by the tape drives.

*Table 1–8 EMI Emission Certificates*

<b>Rackmount</b>	<b>Tabletop</b>
CEmark Class A	CEmark Class B
VCCI Class 1	VCCI Class 2
CISPR 22 Class A	CISPR 22 Class B
FCC Class A Devices	FCC Class B Devices

*Table 1–9 Safety Certifications*

<b>Rackmount and Tabletop</b>	
UL	CSA
TÜV	"BG"
MARK	IEC

### 1.3.9 Reliability (Projected)

Mean time between failures (MTBF) for the tape drive is projected to be 200,000 hours at 100% duty cycle. Head life is 10,000 tape motion hours.

Media durability is projected to be 1,000,000 passes of the tape medium across the read/write heads (15,000 uses).

Quantum Corporation does not warrant that predicted MTBF is representative of any particular unit installed for customer use. Actual figures vary from unit to unit.



### 1.3.10 Acoustic Noise Emissions

The following tables provide the tape drive's acoustic noise emission levels, both as noise power and sound pressure. Information about acoustic emissions is also provided in German to fulfill an international requirement.

*Table 1-10 Acoustic Noise Emissions, Nominal (English)*

<b>Acoustics – Preliminary declared values per ISO9296 and ISO 7779/EN27779</b>				
Product	Noise Power Emission Level		Sound Pressure Level	
	(LNPEc)		(LPAc)	
	Idle	Streaming	Idle	Streaming
Rackmount	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable	Not applicable
Tabletop	4.6 B	5.1 B	30.0 dB	41.0 dB

[Current values for specific configurations are available from Quantum representatives.  
1B = 10 dBA.]

*Table 1-11 Acoustic Noise Emissions for German Noise Declaration Law*

Schallemissionswerte - Vorläufige Werteangaben nach ISO 9296 und 7779/DIN EN27779:				ISO
Gerätdt	Schalleistungspegel		Schalldruckpegel	
	LwAd, B		LpAm, dBA (Zuschauerpositionen)	
	Leerauf	Betrieb	Leerauf	Betrieb
Rackmount	N/A	5,5 B	N/A	45,0 B
Tabletop	5,2 B	5,3 B	39,0 dB	40,0 dB

[Aktuelle Werte für spezielle Ausrüstungsstufen sind über die Quantum Equipment Vertretungen erhältlich. 1 B = 10 dBA]

### 1.3.11 Tape Drive Recording Type

The tape drive uses 2 - 7 RLL code with DLT 2000, DLT 2000xt, or DLT 4000 formats; MFM with 2.6 GB / 6.0 GB DLT 260 and DLT 600 formats.

### 1.3.12 DLTtape Recording Media Specifications

The following table provides specifications for tape media.

*Table 1-12 DLTtape Media Specifications*

<b>DLTtape Media Type</b>	<b>Specifications</b>
DLTtape III	Width: 0.5 in., metal particle Length: 1200 feet (standard 1167 ft. tape) Cartridge Dimensions: 4.1 in x 4.1 in x 1.0 in Shelf Life: 30 years min. @ 20°C & 40% RH (non-condensing) Usage: 1,000,000 passes (typical office/computer environment)
DLTtape IIIxt	Width: 0.5 in., metal particle Length: 1800 feet (extended 1780 ft tape) Cartridge Dimensions: 4.1 in x 4.1 in x 1.0 in Shelf Life: 30 years min. @ 20°C & 40% RH (non-condensing) Usage: 1,000,000 passes (typical office/computer environment)
DLTtape IV	Width: 0.5 in., metal particle Length: 1800 feet (extended 1780 ft. tape) Cartridge Dimensions: 4.1 in x 4.1 in x 1.0 in Shelf Life: 30 years min. @ 20°C & 40% RH (non-condensing) Usage: 1,000,000 passes (typical office/computer environment)

## Chapter 2

# HARDWARE IMPLEMENTATION

---

*This chapter describes how to install the internal tape drive or “brick” into a rackmount system. This includes configuration jumper settings, connector pin assignments, installation instructions, power and signal cabling descriptions, and operating instructions. This chapter also includes information on configuring and connecting the tabletop version of the drive into a system.*

This chapter covers the following topics:

- Safety, Handling and Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) Protection (*Section 2.1*) describes appropriate guidelines when working with the tape drive.
- Drive Setup (*Section 2.2*) describes how to set up the tape drive for SCSI ID, TERMPWR, and parity checking.
- Drive Installation (*Section 2.3*) describes how to mount and install the tape drive into the system.
- Drive Connections (*Section 2.4*) identifies the connectors on the tape drive including the SCSI, power and optional loader connectors.
- Drive Controls and Light Emitting Diodes (LED's) (*Section 2.5*) identifies the front panel controls and LED's and describes their functionality. It also explains density selection.
- Power On Self Test (POST) (*Section 2.6*) describes the activities that occur when power is first applied to the drive.
- Troubleshooting (*Section 2.7*) lists troubleshooting tips in the event that the tape drive fails.

## 2.1 SAFETY, HANDLING AND ELECTROSTATIC DISCHARGE (ESD) PROTECTION

Inappropriate or careless handling of tape drives may result in damage to the product. Follow the precautions and directions to prevent damaging the tape drive.

### 2.1.1 Safety Precautions

For your safety, follow all safety procedures described here and in other sections of the manual.

- Remove power from the computer system (or expansion unit) before installing or removing the tape drive to prevent the possibility of electrical shock or damage to the tape drive. Unplug the unit that contains or is to contain the drive from ac power to provide an added measure of safety.
- Read, understand, and observe any and all label warnings.

### 2.1.2 Handling

Damage to the drive can occur as the result of careless handling, vibration, shock, or electrostatic discharge (ESD). Always handle the tape drive with care to avoid damage to the precision internal components.

Follow these guidelines to avoid damage to the drive:

- Always observe prescribed ESD precautions.
- Keep the drive in its anti-static bag until ready to install.
- Always use a properly fitted wrist strap or other suitable ESD protection when handling the drive.
- Hold drive only by its sides. Do not touch any components on the PCBA.
- Always handle the drive carefully and gently. A drop of ¼ inch onto a bench or desktop may damage a drive.
- Do not bump, jar, or drop the drive. Use care when transporting the drive.
- Always gently place the drive flat, PCB side down, on an appropriate ESD-protected work surface to avoid the drive being accidentally knocked over.
- Do not pack other materials with the drive in its anti-static bag.
- Place the drive in the anti-static bag before placing it in a shipping container.
- Do not stack objects on the drive.
- Do not expose the drive to moisture.
- Do not place hands or foreign objects inside the tape drive's door/receiver area.

### **2.1.3 Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) Protection**

Various electrical components on/within the tape drives are sensitive to static electricity and Electrostatic Discharge (ESD). Even a static buildup or discharge that is too slight to feel can be sufficient to destroy or degrade a component's operation.

To minimize the possibility of ESD-related damage to the drive, we strongly recommend using both a properly installed workstation anti-static mat and a properly installed ESD wrist strap. When correctly installed, these devices reduce the buildup of static electricity that might harm the drive.

Observe the following precautions to avoid ESD-related problems:

- Use a properly installed anti-static pad on your work surface.
- Always use a properly fitted and grounded wrist strap or other suitable ESD protection when handling the drive and observe proper ESD grounding techniques.
- Hold the drive only by its sides. Do not touch any components on the PCBA.
- Leave the drive in its anti-static bag until you are ready to install it in the system.
- Place the drive on a properly grounded anti-static work surface pad when it is out of its protective anti-static bag.
- Do not use the bag as a substitute for the work surface anti-static pad. The outside of the bag may not have the same anti-static properties as the inside. It could actually increase the possibility of ESD problems.
- Do not use any test equipment to check components on the PCBA. There are no user-serviceable components on the drive.

## **2.2 DRIVE SETUP**

Drive setup for DLT 4000 tape drive includes the following:

- Set the SCSI ID for the drive (default = SCSI ID 5)
- Configure the drive to provide TERMPWR
- Set parity checking for the drive (default = parity checking enabled)

If you want to change any of the settings, go to the applicable subsection; otherwise, proceed directly to section 2.3.

### 2.2.1 Set the Rackmount Drive SCSI ID

Each device on the SCSI bus must have a unique SCSI ID address assigned to it. For specific recommendations for assigning SCSI IDs, refer to the system or SCSI controller documentation.

Rackmount drives can be configured for SCSI ID addresses that range from 0 to 7 (default=5) in one of two ways:

- jumper the 10-pin SCSI ID jumper block shown in Figure 2-1, or
- set the IDs through firmware. If the firmware is set to SCSI ID = 5, then no jumpers are installed on the SCSI ID jumper block.

This subsection discusses setting the SCSI ID on the rackmount drive via the jumper block. Table 2-1 lists the SCSI ID address and jumper settings.

#### NOTES

The default setting for the tape drive is SCSI ID 5; the host adapter is typically SCSI ID 7.

A jumper must be installed across Pins 9-10 (Remote ID Present pins) for the host to recognize any SCSI ID selections from this jumper block.

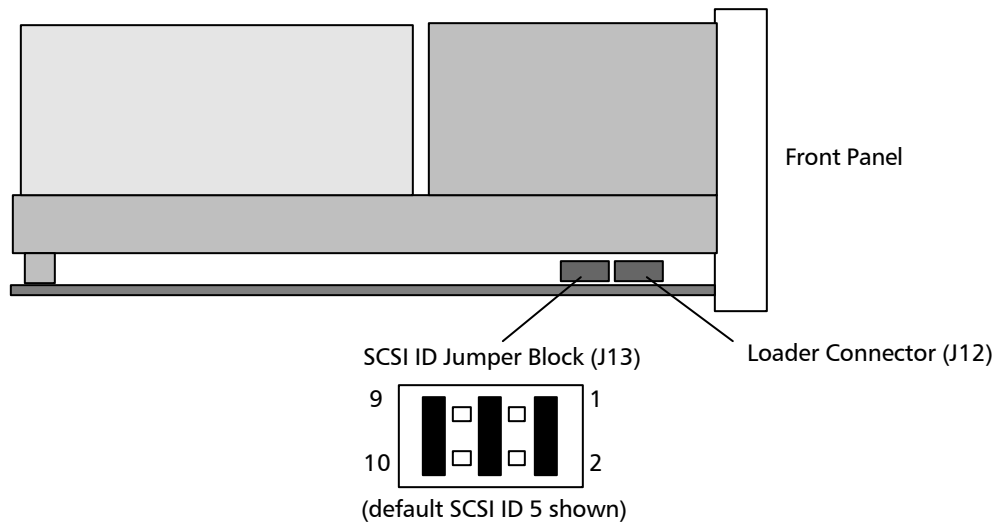


Figure 2-1 DLT 4000 SCSI ID Jumper Location (Rackmount Version Shown)

Table 2-1 SCSI ID Address Selections

SCSI ID	Jumper Across Pins:				
	9-10	7-8	5-6	3-4	1-2
0	1	0	0	0	0
1	1	0	0	0	1
2	1	0	0	1	0
3	1	0	0	1	1
4	1	0	1	0	0
5 (default)	1	0	1	0	1
6	1	0	1	1	0
7	1	0	1	1	1
0 = No Jumper installed    1 = Jumper installed					

### 2.2.2 Configure the Rackmount Drive for TERMPWR (Single-Ended Only)

A SCSI bus must be terminated at each end of the bus. At least one device must supply terminator power (TERMPWR). Quantum recommends that every device on the SCSI bus be configured to supply TERMPWR to ensure that there is a sufficient level of voltage along the SCSI bus.

Install a jumper across Pins **3 and 4** (Figure 2-2) to enable TERMPWR.

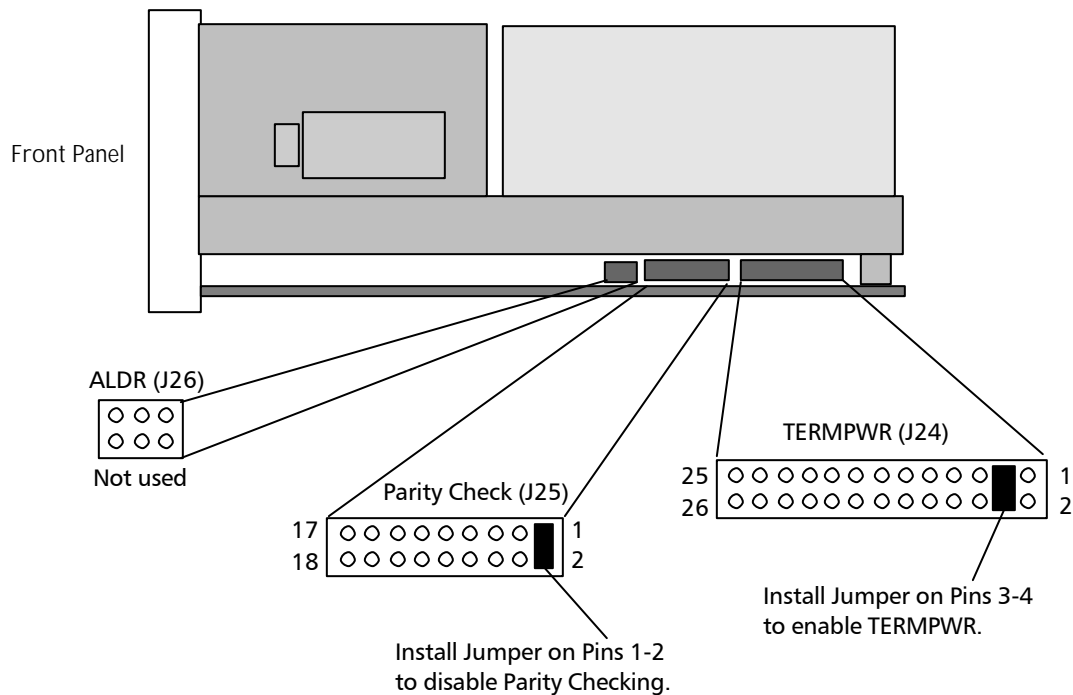


Figure 2-2 DLT 4000 TERMPWR and Parity Check Jumper Locations (Rackmount Version Shown)



### 2.2.3 Configure The Rackmount Drive for Parity Checking

The default setting for DLT 4000 tape drives is to have parity checking enabled.

If the system to which you are configuring the rackmount tape drive does not generate SCSI parity, there are two ways that parity checking can be disabled. You can disable parity checking by:

- (a) Installing a jumper across Pins 1 and 2 on the parity check connector as shown in Figure 2-2, or
- (b) Installing a jumper across Pins 7 and 8 on the SCSI ID jumper block shown in Figure 2-1.

### 2.2.4 Configure the Tabletop Drive

Figures 2-3 and 2-4 show the locations of the controls for the tabletop versions of the drive. Note that these drives are normally configured to meet customer specifications before they leave the factory so should not require any internal configuration changes on-site.

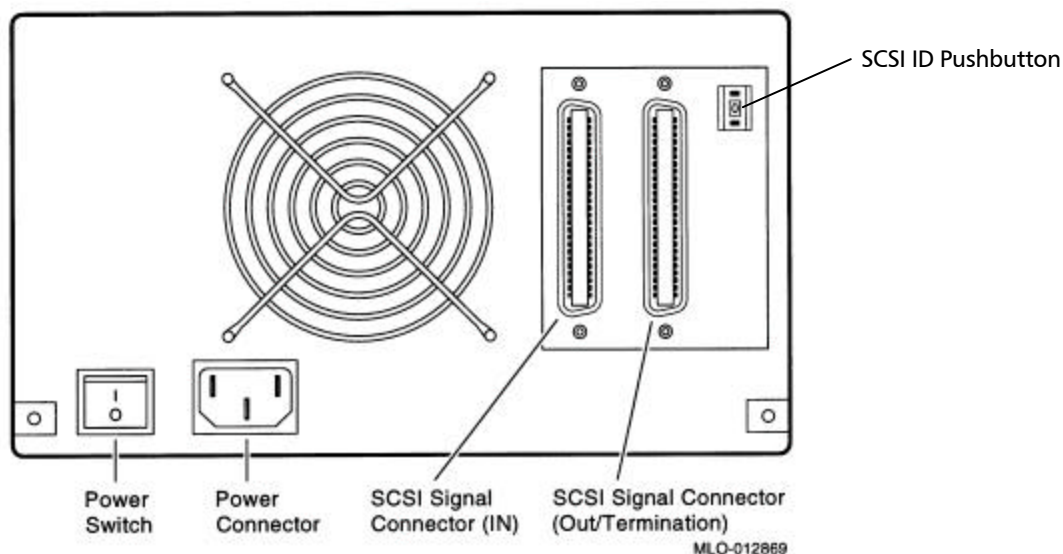
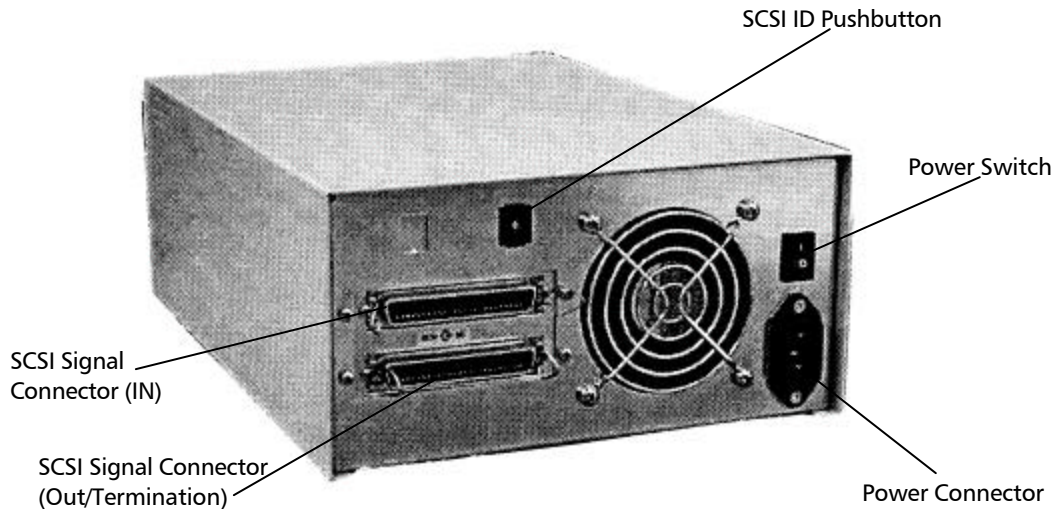


Figure 2-3 Tabletop (Version 1) Back Panel Controls



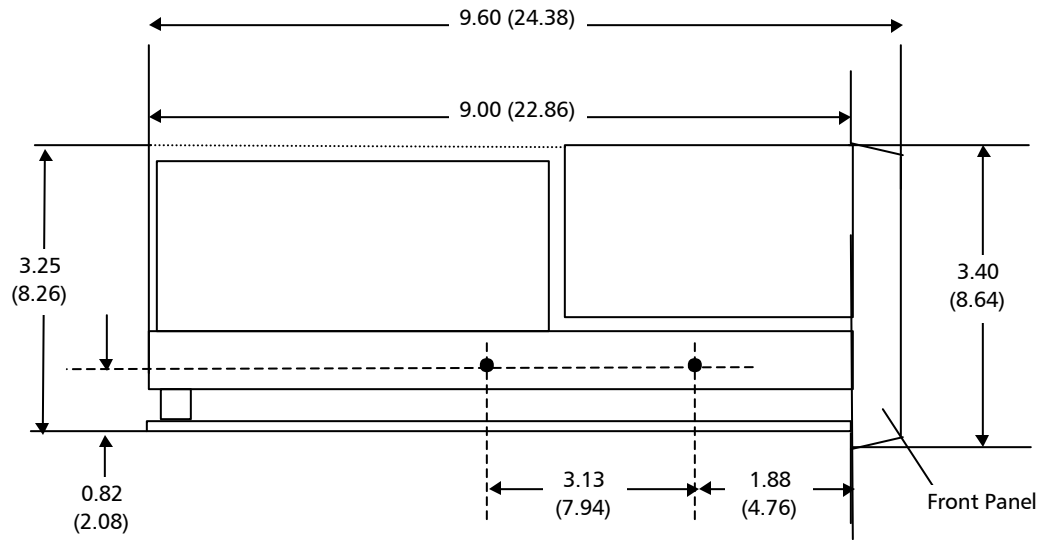
*Figure 2-4 Tabletop (Version 2) Back Panel Controls*

**SCSI ID** - The SCSI ID default for the tabletop drive is set to 5; the drive can be configured for SCSI ID addresses that range from 0 to 7 using the SCSI ID pushbutton. Press the button above or below the ID number display to set the desired SCSI ID. The top button increases the ID number; the bottom button decreases the ID number.

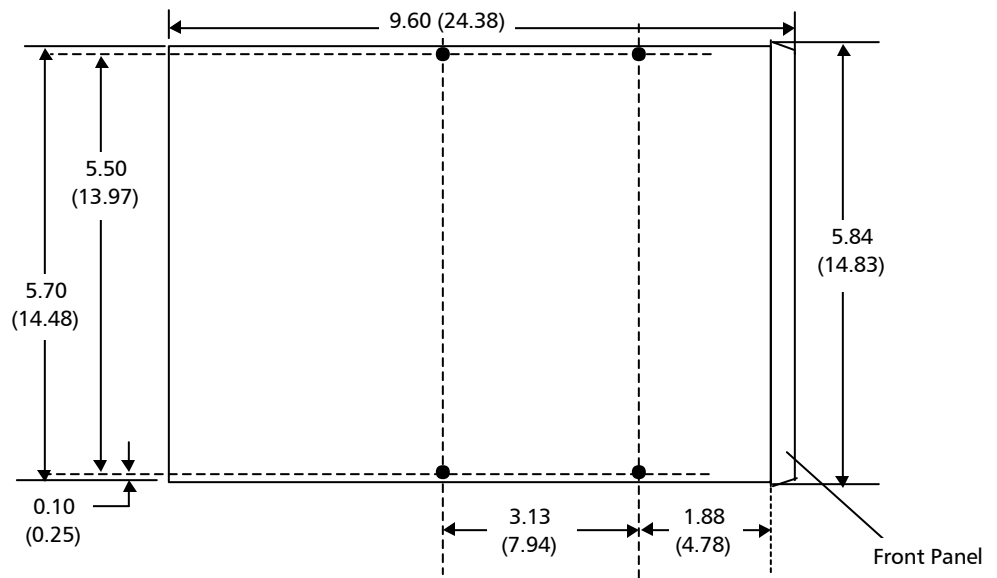
**TERMPWR and/or Parity Check** - The tabletop version of the drive can be internally configured to supply TERMPWR or parity checking. Contact your service representative if you want to change either of these settings on the tabletop version of the drive.

## 2.3 DRIVE INSTALLATION

This section describes how to mount and secure the drive in the system. Figure 2-5 shows the mounting locations and dimensions for the drive.



Side View - Inches (Centimeters)



Bottom View - Inches (Centimeters)

Figure 2-5 Rackmount Drive Mounting Locations – Side and Bottom Views

In some systems, it may be more convenient to connect the SCSI bus and power cables to the drive before securing it in the system.

Because of the variety of mounting possibilities for tape drive, the instructions presented here are general in nature. They should be used only as a guide for mounting the drive in your system.

Mount the drive in the system by performing the following steps:

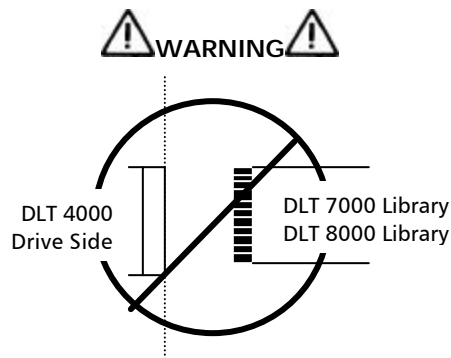
1. Position the drive in the system and align the drive mounting holes (side or bottom) with those in the system.
2. Using four (4) screws, secure the tape drive in its bay or chassis. Note that screws used to mount the tape drive must be 8 x 6-32 UNC-2B screws. There is no danger of these screws touching electronic components or otherwise damaging the tape drive.

## 2.4 DRIVE CONNECTIONS

The following warning applies to the bezel connector located under the front panel of the tape drive. This connector is an internal connector so is not discussed in detail in this manual.

### WARNING

The bezel connector pinout on the DLT 4000 tape drive (Model TH5XB-NP) is not compatible with any other DLT products. A flex cable adapter is available to connect these tape drives to a library/loader system that uses header pins for the bezel connection. Do not use this flex cable adapter to connect to drives other than the Model TH5XB-NP. The following label has been applied to the drive to warn the user when making this connection:



The three external connectors on the DLT 4000 tape drive that are discussed in this manual are the SCSI, power and optional loader connectors. Tabletop connectors are described in subsection 2.4.3.

### 2.4.1 SCSI and Power Connectors (Rackmount)

Figure 2-6 shows the pin orientation for the 50-pin SCSI connector and 4-pin power connector located on the back of the tape drive. Pin assignments for the single-ended and differential SCSI connectors are listed in Tables 2-2 and 2-3; pin assignments for the power connector are listed in Table 2-4.

Align the appropriate SCSI and power cables to their matching connectors. Carefully connect the cables, to avoid bending or damaging the connector pins.

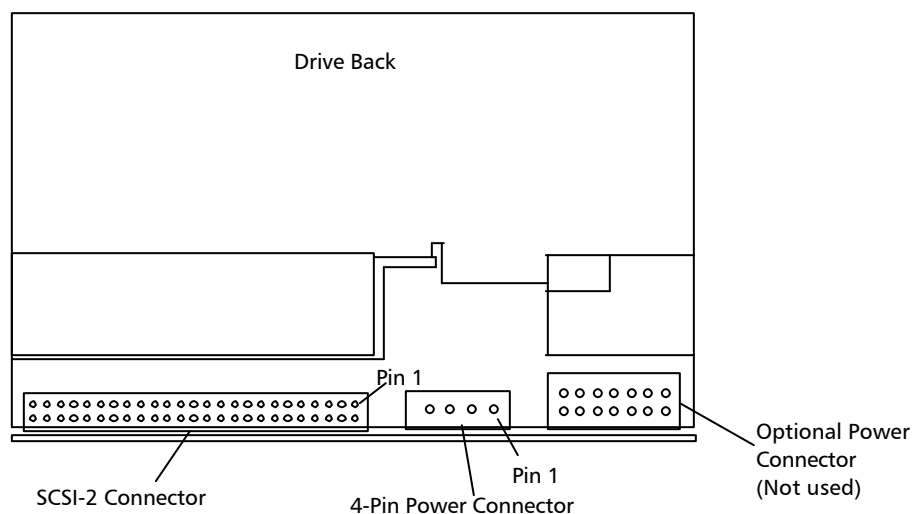


Figure 2-6 SCSI and Power Cable Connectors (Rackmount Version Shown)

Table 2-2 Single-Ended SCSI Pin Assignment

Signal Name	Pin Number	Pin Number	Signal Name
Ground	1	2	-DB(0)
Ground	3	4	-DB(1)
Ground	5	6	-DB(2)
Ground	7	8	-DB(3)
Ground	9	10	-DB(4)
Ground	11	12	-DB(5)
Ground	13	14	-DB(6)
Ground	15	16	-DB(7)
Ground	17	18	-DB(P)
Ground	19	20	Ground
Ground	21	22	Ground
Reserved	23	24	Reserved
Open	25	26	TERMPWR
Reserved	27	28	Reserved
Ground	29	30	Ground
Ground	31	32	-ATN
Ground	33	34	Ground
Ground	35	36	-BSY
Ground	37	38	-ACK
Ground	39	40	-RST
Ground	41	42	-MSG
Ground	43	44	-SEL
Ground	45	46	-C/D
Ground	47	48	-REQ
Ground	49	50	-I/O

**Note:** The minus sign (-) next to a signal indicates active low.

Table 2-3 Differential SCSI Pin Assignment

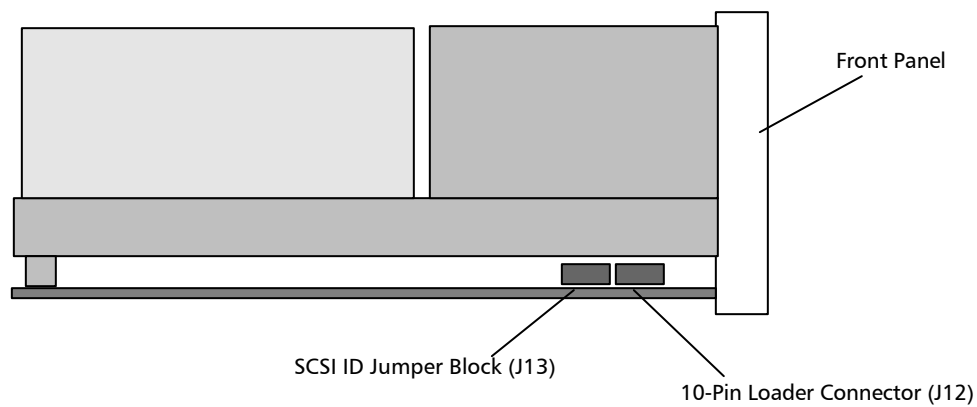
Signal Name	Pin Number	Pin Number	Signal Name
Open	1	2	Ground
DB(0)	3	4	-DB(0)
DB(1)	5	6	-DB(1)
DB(2)	7	8	-DB(2)
DB(3)	9	10	-DB(3)
DB(4)	11	12	-DB(4)
DB(5)	13	14	-DB(5)
DB(6)	15	16	-DB(6)
DB(7)	17	18	-DB(7)
DB(P)	19	20	-DB(P)
DIFFSENS	21	22	Ground
Ground	23	24	Ground
TERMPWR	25	26	TERMPWR
Ground	27	28	Ground
ATN	29	30	-ATN
Ground	31	32	Ground
BSY	33	34	-BSY
ACK	35	36	-ACK
RST	37	38	-RST
MSG	39	40	-MSG
SEL	41	42	-SEL
C/D	43	44	-C/D
REQ	45	46	-REQ
I/O	47	48	-i/O
Ground	49	50	Ground

*Table 2–4 4-Pin Power Connector Pin Assignment*

Pin Number	Signal Name
1	+12 VDC
2	Ground (+12 V return)
3	Ground (+5 V return)
4	+5 VDC

### 2.4.2 Optional Loader Connector (Rackmount)

The loader connector provides signals to be used when the tape drive is part of a loader/library configuration. Figure 2-7 shows the location of the connector.



*Figure 2–7 Loader Connector Block Location (Rackmount Version Shown)*



### 2.4.3 Tabletop Drive Connectors

Figures 2-8 and 2-9 show the locations of the connectors for the tabletop version of the drive.

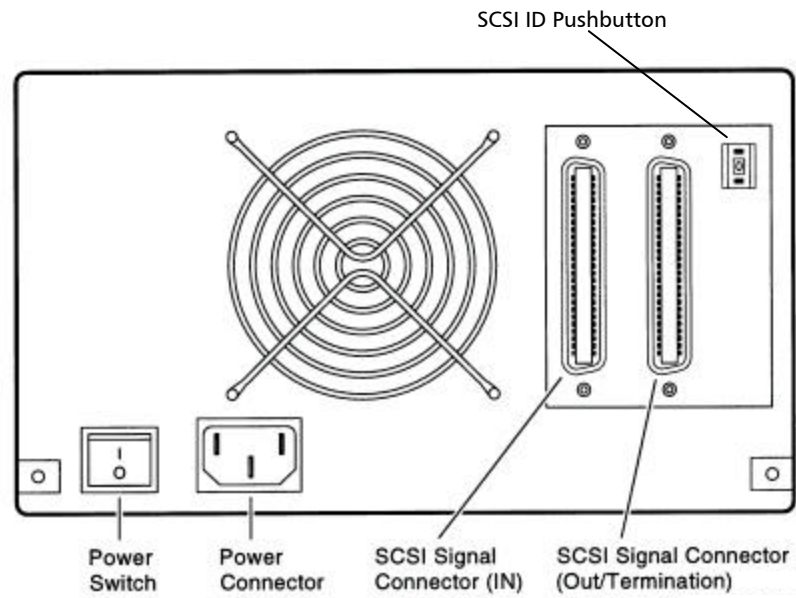
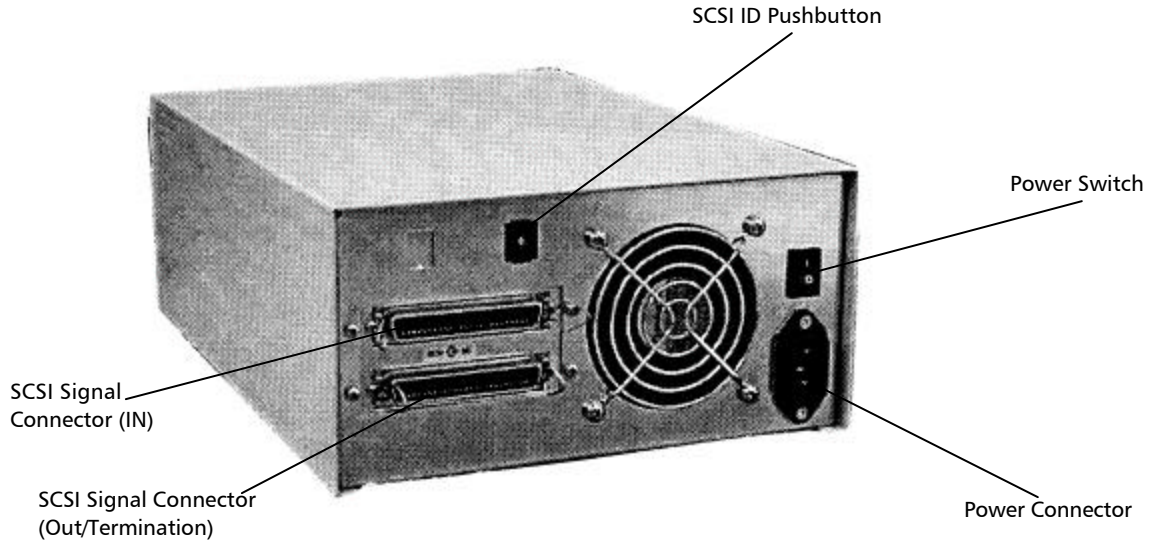


Figure 2-8 Tabletop (Version 1) Back Panel Connectors



*Figure 2-9 Tabletop (Version 2) Back Panel Connectors*

Align the appropriate SCSI and power cables to their matching connectors. Carefully connect the cables and avoid bending or damaging the connector pins.

1. Make sure the power switch is in the off (0) position.
2. Connect one end of the SCSI cable to the SCSI IN connector on the back panel of the drive. Connect the other end of the SCSI cable to the SCSI connector on your system, or for daisy-chained configurations, to another SCSI device.
3. Snap the wire cable clamps into place to secure the cables.
4. Be sure to terminate the SCSI bus. If the tabletop drive is the last or only device on the bus, terminate the bus by connecting the SCSI terminator to the SCSI OUT connector on the back of the drive. Depending on the terminator supplied, snap the wire cable clamps into place or tighten the screws to secure the terminator.

If the tabletop drive is not the last or only device on the bus, install a terminator on the last device on the SCSI bus.

5. Connect one end of the power cord to the power connector on the back of the drive. Connect the other end of the cord to the ac outlet.

## 2.5 DRIVE CONTROLS AND LIGHT EMITTING DIODES (LEDs)

This section identifies the front panel controls and LED's and describes their functionality. It also explains density selection.

### 2.5.1 Front Panel Controls and LED's

This section describes the front panel controls and Light Emitting Diodes (LED's) used to operate the tape drive; all controls and LED's are located on the tape drive's front panel. Figure 2-10 shows the locations of the controls and LED's on the front panel.

In addition to the controls and LED's, the tape drive also has an audible beeper that signals when the drive's cartridge insert/release handle can be safely used. Use these controls and LED's to operate the tape drive and monitor the tape drive's activities.

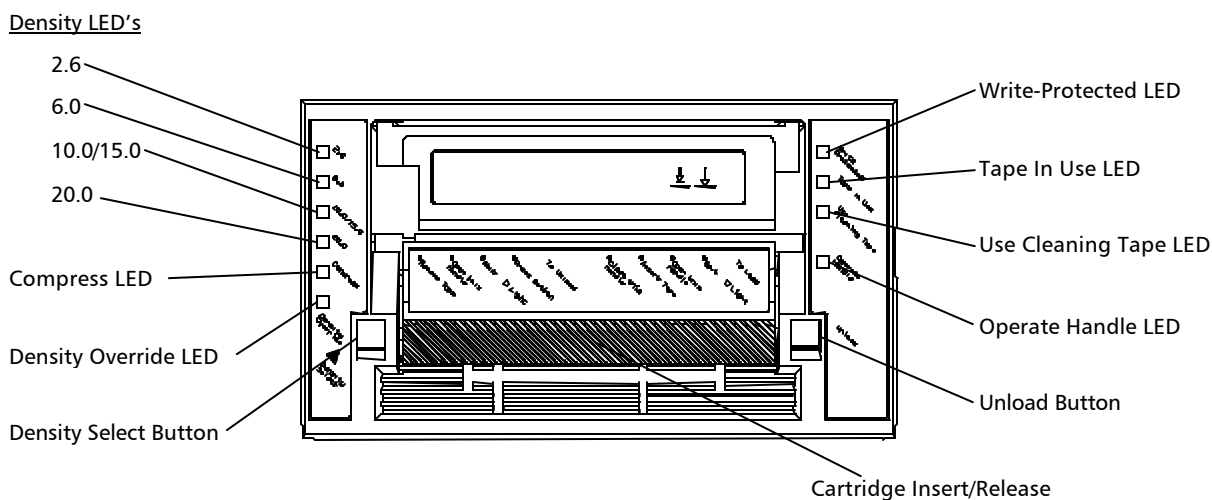


Figure 2-10 DLT 4000 Front Panel

Table 2-5 LED Functionality

LED	LED Color	Description
Density - 2.6, 6.0, 10.0/15.0, 20.0	Amber	Refer to Table 2-6 and subsection 2.5.2.
Compress	Amber	On = Compression mode enabled (compression only valid for 10, 15, or 20 GB densities only).  Off = Compression mode disabled.  Blinking = Compress mode manually overridden by operator.
Density Override	Amber	On = Operator selected a density from the density Select Button on the front panel.  Off = Density to be selected by the host (automatic).  Refer to subsection 2.5.2 for Density Select information.
Write-Protected	Orange	On = Tape is Write-Protected  Off = Tape is Write-Enabled
Tape In Use	Amber	Irregular Blinking = Tape is moving; the drive is calibrating, reading, writing, or rewinding the tape.  Regular Blinking = The tape is loading, unloading, or rewinding.  On = A cartridge is loaded in the tape drive, but the tape is not moving; the drive is ready for use. This may also mean no application is communicating with the tape drive's controller, or that the application is communicating but is not delivering any command that impact tape motion.

Use Cleaning Tape	Amber	<p>On = Tape drive needs cleaning or tape is bad.</p> <p>Remains on after cleaning tape unloads = Cleaning tape attempted to clean the drive head, but the tape expired so cleaning was not done.</p> <p>After cleaning, LED lights again when (data) tape cartridge is reloaded = Problem tape cartridge. Try another cartridge. If problem persists, contact service representative.</p> <p>Off = Cleaning is complete or cleaning is unnecessary.</p> <p>Appendix D has more information on cleaning tape usage.</p>
----------------------	-------	---

---

*Table 2-5 LED Functionality (continued)*

LED	LED Color	Description
Operate Handle	Green	On = Insert/Release handle can be operated.  Off = Do not operate Insert/Release handle.  Blinking = Close the Insert/Release handle and wait for Operate Handle LED to light steadily.

*Table 2-6 Density LED Functionality*

Density LED (Amber)	Description
2.6	On = Tape is recorded in 2.6 GB format.  Blinking = Tape is being forced by operator to record in this density; 2.6 GB has been selected for a WRITE from BOT.
6.0	On = Tape is recorded in 6.0 GB format.  Blinking = Tape is being forced by operator to record in this density; 6.0 GB has been selected for a WRITE from BOT.
10.0 / 15.0	On = Tape is recorded in 10.0 GB (DLTtape III cartridge) / 15.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt cartridge) format.  Blinking = Tape is being forced by operator to record in this density, 10.0 GB / 15.0 GB has been selected for a WRITE from BOT.
20.0	On = Tape is recorded in 20.0 GB (DLTtape IV cartridge) format.  Blinking = Tape is being forced by operator to record in this density, 20.0 GB has been selected for a WRITE from BOT.
Note that these LED's operate only if the correct media is loaded in the drive. For example, the default density of a DLTtape IV cartridge is 20.0 GB; if you are using a DLTtape IV cartridge, the density must be set to 20.0 GB. If you set the density to a different setting, the LED's do not light and the density function does not work properly.	

Table 2-7 Control Functionality

Control	Description
Density Select Button	Refer to subsection 2.5.2.
Unload Button	<p>Use the Unload button to unload the tape cartridge. When you push the Unload button, the tape drive waits until any active writing of data to tape is completed, then begins its unload sequence.</p> <p>The tape drive rewinds the tape medium back into the cartridge. The tape must be completely rewound and unloaded into the cartridge before the cartridge can be removed from the tape drive. A complete unload operation may take 17 seconds from Beginning of Tape (BOT).</p> <p>Note that if the tape drive is in an error state (all LED's on the right-hand side of the front panel are flashing), pushing the Unload button causes the tape drive to reset and unload the tape, if possible. The Operate Handle LED will be lit steady if this is possible.</p>
Cartridge Insert/Release Handle	Use the Cartridge Insert/Release Handle to load or eject a tape cartridge only when the tape drive's Operate Handle LED is lit and after the beeper sounds its tone. Lift the handle to its open position, or lower it to its closed position.
Audible Beeper	<p>A beeper sound indicates that the cartridge insert/release handle can be safely operated. When the drive emits its single beep tone, verify that the green Operate Handle LED is lit steadily before opening the handle.</p> <p>CAUTION: To prevent damage to the tape drive, never operate the insert/release handle unless the green Operate Handle LED is lit and you have heard the beep tone that signals that the tape drive's handle can be opened.</p>

## 2.5.2 Selecting Density

This subsection describes the drive's density select features.

### CAUTION

If a prerecorded tape is reused and a WRITE from the beginning of tape (BOT) executes (No Append Write), any data already recorded on the tape will be lost. This includes density changes, since they occur only when writing from BOT.

### NOTES

On all READ and all WRITE APPEND operations, the data density that already exists on the tape cartridge remains the density.

Default density of a DLTtape™ III cartridge is 10.0 GB, native. The only optional selections for DLTtape III cartridges are 2.6 GB, 6.0 GB, 10.0 GB (compression OFF), or 20.0 GB (compression ON).

Default density of a DLTtape IIIxt cartridge is 15.0 GB, native (compression OFF), or 30.0 GB (compression ON). No other density is supported.

Default density of a DLTtape IV cartridge is 20.0 GB, native (compression OFF). A density of 40.0 GB is user-selectable. No other density is supported.

When writing from BOT, tape density may be changed by:

- Using the Density Select Button on the front panel of the tape drive. Using the Density Select Button always overrides density selection via the host.
- Using the operating system to issue a density designation. In this case, the amber Density Override LED on the tape drive's front panel turns off, indicating an automatic or host density selection.
- Native default density for the DLTtape IV is 20.0 GB. The only available option is compression on or off.



**Selecting Density on the Tape Drive**

To select density on the tape drive:

1. Load the tape cartridge into the tape drive. The amber Tape in Use LED blinks while the tape loads and calibrates.
2. After calibration is complete, the Tape In Use LED remains steadily lit. The appropriate tape density LED along the left edge of the drive's front panel lights to indicate the tape's prerecorded density (if any), such as 2.6 GB or 6.0 GB.
3. Use the tape drive's density Select Button to select the desired density, if different than that indicated by the lighted tape density LED. Density selection is inactive until a WRITE from BOT is issued. The controller retains the selected density until 1) the density selection is changed, or 2) the tape is unloaded.

**Selecting Density via the Host over the SCSI Bus**

1. Use the SCSI MODE SELECT command to indicate the desired density (Chapter 5).
2. Write data to the tape from BOT.

**For Example:**

A user loads a tape cartridge previously recorded at 2.6 GB density. The user then presses the Density Select button to select 10.0 GB density. The following events take place:

- The amber 2.6 LED remains lit – the density has not yet changed and the steadily lit LED reflects the tape's recorded density.
- The amber 10.0 LED blinks – this signals that a density change is pending.
- The amber Density Override LED lights.

When a WRITE from BOT occurs:

- The amber 2.6 LED turns off
- The amber 10.0/15.0 LED lights steadily
- The amber Density Override LED remains lit

Table 2-8 explains the activity of LED's during density selection.

*Table 2-8 LED Activity During Density Selection*

<b>If...</b>	<b>Then...</b>
The density Select Button is not used	The lighted LED's show the actual density when the tape is being read from and written to. The LED's light steadily; Density Override LED remains off.
The density Select Button is used and the actual tape density is the same as the density selected via the button	The LED's that reflect the actual density and the Density Override both are lit. For example, if the actual density is 10.0 GB and 10.0 GB is selected via the Select Button, the LED next to "10.0" lights.
The density Select Button is used and the actual tape density differs from the density selected via the button	<p>The LED that reflects the actual density lights steadily. The LED that reflects the SELECTED density blinks. The Density Override lights steadily.</p> <p>For example, if the actual tape density is 10.0 GB and the selected density is 6.0 GB, the 10.0 LED lights steadily, the 6.0 LED blinks, and the Density Override LED lights steadily.</p>

## **2.6 POWER ON SELF TEST (POST)**

When power is applied to the tape drive, the drive performs a POST. POST completes in about 15 seconds and the tape drive should respond normally to all commands; POST is complete after Stage 2 in Table 2-9. However, it might take longer for the media to become ready.

After a bus reset, the tape drive responds within a bus selection time-out period (per the ANSI SCSI specification).

The following table lists the sequence of events:

Table 2–9 POST/Media Ready Activity

Stage	Activity
1	The LED's along the right-hand side of the front panel light in sequence from top to bottom. All LED's remain lit for a few seconds.
2	The LED's along the left-hand side of the front panel light together for about three seconds, then turn off. POST is complete after this stage.
3	The green Operate Handle, orange Write Protected, and amber User Cleaning Tape LED's turn off. The amber Tape in Use LED blinks while the tape drive initializes.
4	Following initialization, the tape drive is in one of the states described in Table 2-10. Upon completion, the POST is successful. If the POST is not successful, refer to Section 2.8 Troubleshooting.

Table 2–10 Tape Drive States Following Initialization

State	LED Display and Activity
A tape cartridge is present and the handle is down.	The tape drive loads the medium from the cartridge. The Tape In Use LED stops blinking and remains on. The LED next to the tape's actual density is on. When the Density Override LED blinks, a density may be selected. The tape drive is ready for use and the media is positioned at BOT.
No tape cartridge present.	The Tape in Use LED = Off. The Operate Handle LED = On. Insert/Release Handle is unlatched. Tape drive beeper sounds tone to signal that the handle may be raised and a tape cartridge inserted.
A tape cartridge is present, but the handle is up (not recommended).	The Tape In Use LED = Off. The Operate Handle LED flashes. When the Insert/Release Handle is lowered, the cartridge loads. If handle will not lower, ensure the tape cartridge is pushed all the way into the tape drive.
The tape drive detects an error condition.	Right- or left-hand LED's blink repeatedly. Try to unload the tape and reinitialize the tape drive by pressing the Unload button or turn the drive power off then back on. The LED's stop blinking and the drive attempts to reinitialize. Note that after pressing the Unload button you may have to wait five minutes before the Operate Handle LED lights due to the retry. The LED's light steadily, then turn off if the test succeeds.
The drive is powered on with the handle in open position.	Operate Handle LED is blinking. Close the Insert/Release Handle and wait for LED to light steadily.

## 2.7 TROUBLESHOOTING

Table 2-11 lists troubleshooting tips in the event that your tape drive fails its power-on self test or if it signals a problem via its front panel LED's.

If, after attempting the recommended actions listed in Table 2-11, the problem still exists or recurs, a hardware failure may be the cause. Contact your service representative.

*Table 2-11 Troubleshooting Chart*

If...	Then...	You Should...
System does not recognize the tape drive.	System may not be configured to recognize the SCSI ID.	Configure system to recognize the tape drive's ID.
	SCSI ID may not be unique	Change the SCSI ID and reconfigure the system. The new ID becomes effective at the next power on.
	SCSI adapter parameters may not be correct	Check SCSI adapter documentation.
	SCSI signal cable may be loose	Ensure SCSI cable is fully seated at each connector end.
	SCSI terminator may be loose or not present on the bus	Ensure correct, secure termination of bus.
	SCSI bus may not be terminated correctly	If tape drive is last or only device on bus (except for adapter), make sure terminator is installed on tape drive.
		If tape drive is not the last or only device on the bus, check the cable connections and ensure that the bus is properly terminated at each end.
	SCSI terminator may not be at end of bus or more than two terminators may be present.	Ensure that a terminator is installed at each end of the bus. One terminator is usually installed at the host end of the bus.
	SCSI bus may be too long.	Limit bus length to ANSI SCSI standard for the SCSI interface being used.
	Too many devices on the bus.	Limit the number of devices on the bus (including the SCSI adapter) to match the limits of the interface being used.

Table 2-11 Troubleshooting Chart (Continued)

If...	Then...	You Should...
System does not recognize the tape drive (cont.)	A device may not have been turned on and a valid SCSI ID may not have been configured prior to the system powering on and loading BIOS.	Turn drives power on first, and then turn on power to the system. Do this so that the drive is properly recognized by the system.
The tape drive does not power up.	No power is reaching the tape drive.	Check the tape drive's power cable connection at the rear of the drive.
All LED's on the right or on the left side of the tape drive front panel are blinking.	A drive fault has occurred.	If a tape was loaded, try to unload the tape and reinitialize the drive by pressing the Unload button, or by turning power to the drive off then back on. The LED's stop blinking as the drive attempts to reinitialize. The LED's light steadily again, then extinguish if the test succeeds. Be sure to isolate the tape that was loaded in the drive and perform the <i>Tape Cartridge Inspection Procedure</i> described in appendix D.2.
When loading a tape cartridge, the LED's on the right side of the tape drive front panel are blinking.	The tape drive has detected a possible drive leader problem.	Isolate the tape cartridge from all other tape devices; not doing so may damage another tape device. Perform the <i>Tape Cartridge Inspection Procedure</i> described in appendix D.2 on the tape cartridge. Contact your service representative.
Nonfatal or fatal errors occur for which the cause cannot be determined.	SCSI bus termination or the SCSI bus cable connections may be incorrect.  The ac power source grounding may be incorrect (tabletop version).	Ensure the SCSI bus is terminated and that all connections are secure.  Use an ac outlet for the tabletop tape unit on the same ac line used by the host system.



## Chapter 3

# SCSI DESCRIPTION

---

*This chapter provides a detailed description of the logical interfaces of the tape drive. The drive is fully compliant with the ANSI SCSI-2 standard for tape drive devices and implements many optional features.*

### 3.1 SCSI OVERVIEW

The Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) is a specification for a peripheral bus and command set that is an ANSI standard. The standard defines an I/O bus that supports up to eight devices (narrow SCSI).

ANSI defines three primary objectives of SCSI-2:

1. To provide host computers with device-independence within a class of devices
2. To be backward-compatible with SCSI-1 devices that support bus parity and that meet conformance level 2 of SCSI-1
3. To move device-dependent intelligence to the SCSI-2 devices

Important features of SCSI-2 implementation include the following:

- Efficient peer-to-peer I/O bus with up to 16 devices
- Asynchronous transfer rates that depend only on device implementation and cable length
- Logical addressing for all data blocks (rather than physical addressing)
- Multiple initiators and multiple targets
- Distributed arbitration (bus contention logic)
- Command set enhancement

### 3.2 SCSI COMMANDS

ANSI classifies SCSI commands as mandatory, optional, or vendor-specific. The mandatory and optional commands implemented for the drives are summarized in Table 3-1 and described fully in Chapter 5, *SCSI Commands*.

*Table 3-1 Implemented ANSI SCSI-2 Commands*

<b>Command</b>	<b>Code</b>	<b>Class</b>	<b>Description</b>
Erase	19h	Mandatory	Causes all of the tape medium to be erased, beginning at the current position on the logical unit.
INQUIRY	12h	Mandatory	Requests that drive information be sent to the initiator. The initiator may also request additional information about the drive.
LOAD UNLOAD	1Bh	Optional	Requests that the target enable or disable the logical unit for further operations. Prior to performing the load unload, the target ensures that all data, filemarks, and/or setmarks shall have transferred to the tape medium.
LOCATE	2Bh	Optional	Causes the target to position the logical unit to the specified block address in a specified partition. When complete, the logical position is before the specified position. Prior to performing the load unload, the target ensures that all data, filemarks, and/or setmarks shall have transferred to the tape medium.
LOG SELECT	4Ch	Optional	Provides a means for the initiator to manage statistical information maintained by the drive about the drive. This standard defines the format of the log pages but does not define the exact conditions and events that are logged.
LOG SENSE	4Dh	Optional	Provides a means for the initiator to retrieve statistical information maintained by the drive about the drive.



Table 3–1 Implemented ANSI SCSI-2 Commands (continued)

Command	Code	Class	Description
MODE SELECT (6)	15h	Optional	Provides a means for the initiator to specify device parameters.
MODE SENSE (6)	1Ah	Optional	Provides a means for a drive to report parameters to the initiator.
PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL	1Eh	Optional	Requests that the target enable or disable the removal of the medium in the logical unit. Medium cannot be removed if any initiator has medium removal prevented.
READ	08h	Mandatory	Requests the drive to transfer data to the initiator.
READ BLOCK LIMITS	05h	Mandatory	Requests that the logical unit's block length limits capability be returned
READ BUFFER	3Ch	Optional	Used in conjunction with the WRITE BUFFER command as a diagnostic function for testing target memory and the integrity of the SCSI bus. This command does not alter the medium.
READ POSITION	34 h	Optional	Reports the current position of the logical unit and any data blocks in the buffer.
RECEIVE DIAG RESULTS	1Ch	Optional	Requests analysis data to be sent to the initiator after completion of a SEND DIAGNOSTIC Command.
RELEASE UNIT	17h	Mandatory	Used to release a previously reserved logical unit.
REQUEST SENSE	03h	Mandatory	Requests the drive to transfer sense data to the initiator.
RESERVE UNIT	16h	Mandatory	Used to reserve a logical unit.
SEND DIAGNOSTIC	1Dh	Mandatory	Requests the drive to perform diagnostic operations on itself.

*Table 3–1 Implemented ANSI SCSI-2 Commands (continued)*

Command	Code	Class	Description
SPACE	11h	Mandatory	Provides a selection of positioning functions (both forward and backward) that are determined by the code and count.
TEST UNIT READY	00h	Mandatory	Provides a means to check if the logical unit is ready.
VERIFY	2Fh	Optional	Requests the drive to verify the data written to the medium.
WRITE	0Ah	Optional	Requests the drive to write the data transferred from the initiator to the medium.
WRITE BUFFER	3Bh	Optional	Used in conjunction with the READ BUFFER command as a diagnostic for testing target memory and the integrity of the SCSI bus.  Used to update drive firmware from the host via the SCSI bus.
WRITE FILEMARKS	10h	Mandatory	Requests that the target write the specified number of filemarks or setmarks to the current position on the logical unit.

### 3.3 SIGNAL STATES

The following paragraphs describe signal values and SCSI ID bits.

#### 3.3.1 Signal Values

All signal values are actively driven true (low voltage). Because the signal drivers are OR-tied, the bus terminator's bias circuitry pulls false when it is released by the drivers at every SCSI device. If any device asserts a signal, (e.g., OR-tied signals), the signal is true. Table 3–2 shows the ANSI-specified and defined signal sources. Any device can assert RST at any time.

Table 3–2 Signal Sources

Bus Phase	Signals					
	BSY	SEL	C/D I/O MSG REQ	ACK ATN	DB(7–0) DB(P)	DB(15-8) DB(P1)
BUS FREE	None	None	None	None	None	None
ARBITRATION	All	Winner	None	None	S ID	S ID
SELECTION	I&T	Init	None	Init	Init	Init
RESELECTION	I&T	Targ	Targ	Init	Targ	Targ
COMMAND	Targ	None	Targ	Init	Init	None
DATA IN	Targ	None	Targ	Init	Targ	Targ
DATA OUT	Targ	None	Targ	Init	Init	Init
STATUS	Targ	None	Targ	Init	Targ	None
MESSAGE IN	Targ	None	Targ	Init	Targ	None
MESSAGE OUT	Targ	None	Targ	Init	Init	None

All: The signal is driven by all SCSI devices that are actively arbitrating.

SCSI ID: Each SCSI device that is actively arbitrating asserts its unique SCSI ID bit. The other seven (or fifteen) data bits are released. The parity bit DB (P or P1) can be released or driven true, but is never driven false during this phase.

I&T: The signal is driven by the initiator, drive, or both, as specified in the SELECTION and RESELECTION phase.

Init: If driven, this signal is driven only by the active initiator.

None: The signal is released; that is, not driven by any SCSI device. The bias circuitry of the bus terminators pulls the signal to the false state.

Winner: The signal is driven by the winning SCSI device.

Targ: If the signal is driven, it is driven only by the active drive.

### 3.3.2 SCSI ID Bits

SCSI permits a maximum of eight SCSI devices on a SCSI bus (16 devices are permitted when using wide SCSI). Each SCSI device has a unique SCSI ID assigned to it. This SCSI ID provides an address for identifying the device on the bus. On the drive, the SCSI ID is assigned by configuring jumpers or connecting remote switches to the option connector. Chapter 2, *Hardware Implementation* has full instructions for setting the SCSI ID.

## 3.4 SCSI SIGNALS

The following paragraphs define SCSI signals and bus timing values.

### 3.4.1 SCSI Signal Definitions

Table 3–3 defines the SCSI bus signals.

*Table 3–3 SCSI-2 Bus Signal Definitions*

Signal	Definition
ACK (acknowledge)	A signal driven by the initiator as an acknowledgment of receipt of data from a target or as a signal to a target indicating when the target should read the data (out) lines.
ATN (attention)	A signal driven by an initiator to indicate that it has a message to send.
BSY (busy)	An OR-tied signal that indicates that the bus is in use.
C/D (control/data)	A signal driven by a target that indicates whether CONTROL or DATA information is on the DATA BUS. True (low voltage) indicates CONTROL.
DB(7–0,P) (data bus)	Eight data-bit signals, plus a parity-bit signal that form a DATA BUS. DB(7) is the most significant bit and has the highest priority (8 or 16-bit) during ARBITRATION. Bit number, significance, and priority decrease downward to DB(0). A data bit is defined as 1 when the signal value is true (low voltage) and 0 when the signal value is false (high voltage). Data parity DB(P) is odd. Parity is undefined during ARBITRATION.

Table 3-3 SCSI-2 Bus Signal Definitions (continued)

Signal	Definition
DB(15-8,P1) (data bus)	Eight data-bit signals, plus one parity-bit signal, that forms an extension to the DATA BUS. They are used for 16-bit (wide) interfaces. DB(15) is the most significant bit and has the higher priority (but below bit DB(0) during ARBITRATION. Bit number, significance, and priority decrease downward to DB(8). Data Parity DB (P1) is odd.
I/O (input/output)	A signal driven by a target that controls the direction of data movement on the DATA BUS with respect to an initiator. True indicates input to the initiator.  Also used to distinguish between SELECTION and RESELECTION modes.
MSG (message)	A signal driven by a target during the MESSAGE phase.
REQ (request)	A signal driven by a target to indicate a request for an information transfer to or from the initiator. Each byte of data transferred is accompanied with a REQ/ACK "handshake". See also, ACK.
RST (reset)	An OR-tied signal that initiates a RESET condition.
SEL (select)	An OR-tied signal used by an initiator to select a target or by a target to reselect an initiator.

### 3.4.2 Signal Bus Timing

The ANSI SCSI-2 standard defines the SCSI bus timing values shown in Table 3-4.

Table 3-4 SCSI Bus Timing Values

Timing Description	Value	Description
Arbitration Delay	2.4 $\mu$ s	Minimum time a SCSI device waits from asserting BSY for arbitration until the DATA BUS can be examined to see if arbitration has been won; there is no maximum time.
Assertion Period	90 ns	Minimum time a drive asserts REQ while using synchronous data transfers; also, the minimum time that an initiator asserts ACK while using synchronous data transfers.
Bus Clear Delay	800 ns	<p>Maximum time for a SCSI device to stop driving all bus signals after:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. BUS FREE is detected.</li> <li>2. SEL is received from another SCSI device during ARBITRATION.</li> <li>3. Transition of RST to true.</li> </ol> <p>For condition 1, the maximum time for a SCSI device to clear the bus is 1200 ns (1.2 <math>\mu</math>s) from BSY and SEL first becoming both false.</p> <p>If a SCSI device requires more than a bus settle delay to detect BUS FREE, it clears the bus within a bus clear delay minus the excess time.</p>
Bus Free Delay	800 ns	Maximum time a SCSI device waits from its detection of BUS FREE until its assertion of BSY when going to ARBITRATION.
Bus Set Delay	1.8 $\mu$ s	Maximum time for a device to assert BSY and its SCSI ID bit on the DATA BUS after it detects BUS FREE to enter ARBITRATION.
Bus Settle Delay	400 ns	Minimum time to wait for the bus to settle after changing certain control signals as called out in the protocol definitions.
Cable Skew Delay	10 ns	Maximum difference in propagation time allowed between any two SCSI bus signals measured between any two SCSI devices.
<sup>1</sup> Recommended Time.		

Table 3–4 SCSI Bus Timing Values (continued)

Timing Description	Value	Description
Data Release Delay	400 ns	Maximum time for an initiator to release the DATA BUS signals following the transition of the I/O signal from false to true.
Deskew Delay	45 ns	Minimum time required to wait for all signals (especially data signals) to stabilize at their correct, final value after changing.
Disconnection Delay	200 $\mu$ s	Minimum time that a drive waits after releasing BSY before participating in an ARBITRATION when honoring a DISCONNECT message from the initiator.
Hold Time	45 ns	Minimum time added between the assertion of REQ or ACK and changing the data lines to provide hold time in the initiator or drive while using standard (slow) synchronous data transfers.
Negation Period	90 ns	Minimum time that a drive negates REQ while using synchronous data transfers; also, the minimum time than an initiator negates ACK while using synchronous data transfers. <sup>1</sup>
Power-On to Selection	10 s <sup>1</sup>	Recommended maximum time from power application until a drive is able to respond with appropriate status and sense data to the TEST UNIT READY, INQUIRY, and REQUEST SENSE commands.
Reset to Selection Time	250 ms <sup>1</sup>	Recommended maximum time after a hard RESET condition until a drive is able to respond with appropriate status and sense data to the TEST UNIT READY, INQUIRY, and REQUEST SENSE commands.
Reset Hold Time	25 $\mu$ s	Minimum time for which RST is asserted; there is no maximum time.
Selection Abort Time	200 $\mu$ s	Maximum time that a drive (or initiator) takes from its most recent detection of being selected (or reselected) until asserting a BSY response.
<sup>1</sup> Recommended Time.		

*Table 3-4 SCSI Bus Timing Values (continued)*

Timing Description	Value	Description
Selection Time-Out Delay	250 ms <sup>1</sup>	Recommended minimum time a SCSI device should wait for a BSY response during SELECTION or RESELECTION before starting the time-out procedure.
Transfer Period (set during an SDTR message.)		Minimum time allowed between the leading edges of successive REQ pulses and of successive ACK pulses while using standard or fast synchronous data transfers. The period range is 200 to 500ns minimum, standard, or 100 to 500ns minimum, fast-synchronous.
<sup>1</sup> Recommended Time.		

### 3.5 SCSI BUS PHASES

The SCSI architecture includes eight distinct phases:

1. BUS FREE phase
2. ARBITRATION phase
3. SELECTION phase
4. RESELECTION phase
5. COMMAND phase
6. DATA phases (In/Out)
7. STATUS phase
8. MESSAGE phases (In/Out)

The last four phases are called the “information transfer phases”.

The SCSI bus can never be in more than one phase at any given time. In the following descriptions, signals that are not mentioned are not asserted.

#### 3.5.1 BUS FREE Phase

The BUS FREE phase indicates that there is no current I/O process and that the SCSI bus is available for a connection.

SCSI devices detect the BUS FREE phase after the SEL and BSY signals are both false for at least one bus settle delay.



During normal operation, the BUS FREE phase is entered when the drive releases the BSY signal. However, the BUS FREE phase can be entered following the release of the SEL signal after a SELECTION or RESELECTION phase timeout. BUS FREE might be entered unexpectedly. If, for example, an internal hardware or firmware fault makes it unsafe for the tape drive to continue operation without a full reset (similar to a power-up reset), or if ATN is asserted or a bus parity error is detected during non-tape data transfers.

**CAUTION**

Any occurrence of a bus parity error (i.e., a single-bit error) should be considered serious: it implies the possibility of undetected double-bit error may exist on the bus. This may cause undetected data corruption. On properly configured SCSI buses, parity errors are extremely rare. If any are detected they should be addressed by improving the configuration of the SCSI bus. A well-configured SCSI bus in a normal environment should be virtually free of bus parity errors.

Bus parity errors cause the tape drive to retry the operation, go to the STATUS phase, or go to BUS FREE and prepare Sense Data. Retrying of parity errors during Data Out Phase when writing is normally not done, but can be enabled by changing the EnaParErrRetry parameter in the VU EEROM Mode Page. This feature is not enabled by default because of possible negative impact on device performance (the data stream on writes cannot be pipelined as well).

Initiators normally do not expect the BUS FREE phase to begin because of the drive's release of the BSY signal unless it has occurred after the detection of a reset condition or after a drive has successfully transmitted or received one of the following messages:

**Messages Transmitted from Drive:**

- DISCONNECT
- COMMAND COMPLETE

**Messages Received by Drive:**

- ABORT
- BUS DEVICE RESET
- RELEASE RECOVERY

If an initiator detects the release of the BSY signal by the drive at any other time, the drive is indicating an error condition to the initiator. The drive can perform this transition to the BUS FREE phase independently of the state of the ATN signal. The initiator manages this condition as an unsuccessful I/O process termination. The drive terminates the I/O process by clearing all pending data and status information for the affected nexus. The drive can optionally prepare sense data that can be retrieved by a REQUEST SENSE command.

**Bus Free Sequence**

1. BSY and SEL signals are continuously false for one bus settle delay.
2. SCSI devices release all SCSI bus signals within one bus clear delay.

If a SCSI device requires more than one bus settle delay to detect the BUS FREE phase, then it releases all SCSI bus signals within one bus clear delay minus the excess time to detect the BUS FREE phase.

The total time to clear the SCSI bus cannot exceed one bus settle delay plus one bus clear delay.

### **3.5.2 ARBITRATION Phase**

The ARBITRATION phase allows one SCSI device to gain control of the SCSI bus so that it can initiate or resume an I/O process.

The SCSI device arbitrates for the SCSI bus by asserting both the BSY signal and its own SCSI ID after a BUS FREE phase occurs.

**Arbitration Sequence**

1. The SCSI device waits for the BUS FREE phase to occur.
2. The SCSI device waits a minimum of one bus free delay after detection of the BUS FREE phase before driving any signal.
3. The SCSI device arbitrates for the SCSI bus by asserting the BSY signal and its SCSI ID.

4. The SCSI device waits at least an arbitration delay to determine arbitration results.

**NOTE**

Step 4 requires that every device complete the arbitration phase to the point of SEL being asserted (for a SELECTION or RESELECTION phase) to avoid hanging the bus.

- If a higher priority SCSI ID bit is true on the DATA BUS, the SCSI device loses the arbitration.
- The losing SCSI device releases the BSY signal and its SCSI ID bit within one bus clear delay after the SEL signal asserted by the arbitration winner becomes true.
- The losing SCSI device waits for the SEL signal to become true before releasing the BSY signal and SCSI ID bit when arbitration is lost.
- The losing SCSI device returns to Step 1.
- If no higher priority SCSI ID bit is true on the DATA BUS, the SCSI device wins the arbitration and asserts the SEL signal.
- The winning SCSI device waits at least one bus clear delay plus one bus settle delay after asserting the SEL signal before changing any signals.

**3.5.3 SELECTION Phase**

The SELECTION phase allows an initiator to select a drive to initiate a drive function.

The SCSI device that won the arbitration has both the BSY and SEL signals asserted and has delayed at least one bus clear delay plus one bus settle delay before ending the ARBITRATION phase. The SCSI device that won the arbitration becomes an initiator by not asserting the I/O signal.

During SELECTION, the I/O signal is negated so that this phase can be distinguished from the RESELECTION phase.

### 3.5.3.1 Selection Sequence

**The initiator:**

1. Sets the DATA BUS to the OR of its SCSI ID bit and the drive's SCSI ID bit.
2. Asserts the ATN signal (signaling that a MESSAGE OUT phase is to follow the SELECTION phase).
3. Waits at least two deskew delays.
4. Releases the BSY signal.
5. Waits at least one bus settle delay.
6. Looks for a response from the drive.

**The drive:**

7. Determines that it is selected when the SEL signal and its SCSI ID bit are true and the BSY and I/O signals are false for at least one bus settle delay.
8. Can examine the DATA BUS to determine the SCSI ID of the selecting initiator.
9. Asserts the BSY signal within a selection abort time of its most recent detection of being selected (this is required for correct operation of the selection time-out procedure).

The drive does not respond to a selection if bad parity is detected. Also, if more than two SCSI ID bits are on the DATA BUS, the drive does not respond to selection.

Note that the initiator will release the SEL signal and may change the DATA BUS no less than two deskew delays after it detects that the BSY signal is true. The drive waits until the SEL signal is false before asserting the REQ signal to enter an information transfer phase. Other signals (e.g., MSG, C/D) may also be asserted.

### 3.5.3.2 Selection Time-Out

Two optional time-out procedures are specified for clearing the SCSI bus if the initiator waits a minimum of a selection time-out delay and there has been no BSY signal response from the drive.

The initiator asserts the RST signal.

1. The initiator follows these steps:
  - a) Continues asserting the SEL and ATN signals and releases the DATA BUS.
  - b) If it has not detected the BSY signal to be true after at least a selection abort time plus two deskew delays, the drive releases the SEL and ATN signals, allowing the SCSI bus to go to the BUS FREE phase.

When responding to selection, SCSI devices ensure that the selection was still valid within a selection abort time of their assertion of the BSY signal. Failure to comply with the requirement could result in an improper selection.

### **3.5.4 RESELECTION Phase**

RESELECTION is an optional phase that allows a drive to reconnect to an initiator to continue an operation that was previously started by the initiator but was suspended by the drive.

The initiator determines that it is reselected when the SEL and I/O signals and its SCSI ID bit are true, and the BSY signal is false for at least one bus settle delay.

#### **3.5.4.1 Reselection Sequence**

The drive:

1. Upon completing the ARBITRATION phase, asserts both the BSY and SEL signals.
2. Delays at least one bus clear delay plus one bus settle delay.
3. Asserts the I/O signal.
4. Sets the DATA BUS to the logical OR of its SCSI ID bit and the initiator's SCSI ID bit.
5. Waits at least two deskew delays.
6. Releases the BSY signal.
7. Waits at least one bus settle delay before looking for a response from the initiator.

The initiator:

8. Determines that it is selected when the following occur for at least one bus settle delay: SEL, I/O, and the initiator's SCSI ID bit are true and BSY is false.
9. Examines the DATA BUS to determine the SCSI ID of the reselecting drive.
10. Asserts the BSY signal within a selection abort time of its most recent detection of being reselected.

The initiator does not respond to a RESELECTION phase if bad parity is detected or if more than two SCSI ID bits are on the DATA BUS.

The drive:

11. Detects the BSY signal is true.
12. Asserts the BSY signal.
13. Waits at least two deskew delays.
14. Releases the SEL signal.
15. The drive can then change the I/O signal and the DATA BUS.

The initiator:

16. Detects the SEL signal is false.
17. Releases the BSY signal.

The drive:

18. Continues asserting the BSY signal until it relinquishes the SCSI bus.

#### **3.5.4.2 Reselection Time-Out**

Two optional time-out procedures are specified for clearing the SCSI bus if the initiator waits a minimum of a selection time-out delay and there has been no BSY signal response from the drive.

1. The initiator asserts the RST signal.
2. The initiator follows these steps:
  - a) Continues asserting the SEL and ATN signals and releases the DATA BUS.
  - b) If it has not detected the BSY signal to be true after at least a selection abort time plus two deskew delays, releases the SEL and ATN signals, allowing the SCSI bus to go to the BUS FREE phase.

SCSI devices that respond to the RESELECTION phase must ensure that the reselection is still valid within a selection abort time of asserting the BSY signal.

### **3.5.5 Information Transfer Phases**

#### **NOTES**

1. The tape drive supports narrow asynchronous and synchronous data transfers.
2. Both differential and single-ended versions of the tape drive are available.
3. Odd parity is generated during all information transfer phases during which the device writes data to the SCSI bus, and parity is checked during all transfer phases in which data is read from the bus by the tape drive. Parity checking can be disabled (Chapter 2).
4. The ANSI SCSI specification refers to mini-libraries as "medium changers." In this chapter the term "mini-libraries" is used to describe these devices.
5. The DLT 4000 supports block size of 1byte to 16 Mbytes.
6. Disconnects from the SCSI bus are done at regular intervals during information transfer phases to allow other devices to access the bus. These disconnects are user-configurable via the Disconnect-Reconnect Page of the SCSI MODE SELECT command.
7. The tape drive does not act as an initiator on the SCSI bus. Therefore, the drive does not 1) generate unsolicited interrupts to the bus, 2) initiate its own SCSI commands, and 3) assert bus reset.
8. A mini-library subsystem is assigned two logical unit numbers (LUNs): the tape drive is always LUN 0, and the mini-library component has a default LUN of 1, but may be reconfigured to any LUN from 0 to 15 via the SCSI MODE SELECT command.

The COMMAND, DATA, STATUS, and MESSAGE phases are known as the Information Transfer Phases because they are used to transfer data or control information.

The C/D, I/O, and MSG signals are used to distinguish between the different information transfer phases (Table 3–5). The drive asserts these three signals and so controls all information transfer phase changes. The drive can also cause a BUS FREE phase by releasing the MSG, C/D, I/O, and BSY signals. The initiator can request a MESSAGE OUT phase by asserting the ATN signal.

The information transfer phases use one or more REQ/ACK handshakes to control the information transfer. Each REQ/ACK handshake allows the transfer of one byte of information. During the information transfer phases, the BSY signal remains true and the SEL signal remains false. Additionally, the drive continuously envelopes the REQ/ACK handshake(s) with the C/D, I/O, and MSG signals in such a manner that these control signals are valid for one bus settle delay before the assertion of the REQ signal of the first handshake and remain valid after the negation of the ACK signal at the end of the handshake of the last transfer of the phase.

After the negation of the ACK signal of the last transfer of the phase, the drive can prepare for a new phase by asserting or negating the C/D, I/O, and MSG signals. These signals can be changed together or individually. They can be changed in any order and can be changed more than once (although each line should change only once). A new phase does not begin until the REQ signal is asserted for the first byte of the new phase.

A phase ends when the C/D, I/O, or MSG signal changes after the negation of the ACK signal. The time between the end of a phase and the assertion of the REQ signal beginning a new phase is undefined. An initiator is allowed to anticipate a new phase based on the previous phase, the expected new phase, and early information provided by changes in the C/D, I/O, and MSG signals. However, the anticipated phase is not valid until the REQ signal is asserted at the beginning of the next phase.

**Information Transfer Direction**

True I/O Signal: from drive to initiator

False I/O Signal: from initiator to drive



Table 3–5 Information Transfer Phases

Signal			Phase Name	Direction of Transfer/ Definition
MSG	C/D	I/O		
0	0	0	DATA OUT	Initiator to drive.  Allows the drive to request that data be sent from the initiator to the drive.
0	0	1	DATA IN	Drive to initiator.  Allows the drive to send data to the initiator.
0	1	0	COMMAND	Initiator to drive.  Allows the drive to request a command from the initiator.
0	1	1	STATUS	Drive to initiator.  Allows the drive to send status information be sent from the drive to the initiator.
1	1	0	MESSAGE OUT	Initiator to drive.  Allows the drive to request that message(s) be sent from the initiator to the drive; the drive invokes this phase in response to the attention condition created by the initiator.  The drive handshakes byte(s) until the ATN signal is negated, except when rejecting a message.  See 3.5.5.4 <i>Message Out — Additional Conditions</i> .
1	1	1	MESSAGE IN	Drive to initiator.  Allows the drive to send message(s) to the initiator.

### 3.5.5.1 Asynchronous Data Transfer

#### Drive to Initiator Transfer Procedure

1. The drive drives the DB (7–0, P) signals to their desired values.
2. Drive delays at least one deskew delay plus a cable skew delay.
3. Drive asserts the REQ signal.
4. Initiator reads the DB (7–0, P) signals.
5. Initiator indicates its acceptance of the data by asserting the ACK signal.
6. When ACK is true at the drive, drive can change or release the DB (7–0, P) signals.
7. Drive negates the REQ signal.
8. Initiator negates the ACK signal.
9. Drive can continue the transfer by driving the DB (7–0, P) signals and asserting the REQ signal (Steps 1 – 3).

#### Initiator-to-Drive Transfer Procedure

1. Drive asserts the REQ signal.
2. Initiator drives the DB (7–0, P) signals to their desired values.
3. Initiator delays at least one deskew delay plus a cable skew delay.
4. Initiator asserts the ACK signal.
5. When ACK is true at the drive, drive reads the DB (7–0, P) signals.
6. Drive negates the REQ signal.
7. Initiator can change or release the DB (7–0, P) signals.
8. Initiator negates the ACK signal.
9. Drive can continue the transfer by asserting the REQ signal (Step 1).

### 3.5.5.2 Synchronous Data Transfer

Synchronous Data Transfer is optional and is only used in DATA phases and only if a synchronous data transfer agreement is established. The REQ/ACK offset specifies the maximum number of REQ pulses that can be sent by the drive in advance of the number of ACK pulses received from the initiator, establishing a pacing mechanism. If the number of REQ pulses exceeds the number of ACK pulses by the REQ/ACK offset, the drive does not assert the

REQ signal until after the leading edge of the next ACK pulse is received. For successful completion of the data phase, the number of ACK and REQ pulses must be equal.

The initiator sends one ACK signal pulse for each REQ pulse received. The ACK signal can be asserted as soon as the leading edge of the corresponding REQ pulse has been received.

**Drive-to-Initiator Transfer Procedure**

1. The drive sets the DB (7-0, P) signals to the desired values. The DB (7-0, P) signals are held valid for a minimum of one deskew delay plus one cable skew delay after REQ is asserted.
2. Drive delays at least one deskew delay plus a cable skew delay.
3. Drive asserts the REQ signal for a minimum of one assertion period. Drive can negate the REQ signal and change or release the DB (7-0, P) signals.
4. Initiator reads the DB (7-0, P) signals within one hold time of the transition of the REQ signal to true.
5. Initiator indicates its acceptance of the data by asserting an ACK pulse.
6. The drive waits at least the greater of these periods before again asserting REQ:
  - c) A transfer period from the last transition of the REQ signal to true, or
  - d) A negation period from the last transition of the REQ signal to false.
7. The initiator waits at least the greater of these periods before reasserting ACK:
  - a) A transfer period from the last transition of the ACK signal to true, or
  - b) A negation period from the last transition of the ACK signal to false.

**Initiator-to-Drive Transfer Procedure**

Initiator transfers one byte for each REQ pulse received.

1. Drive asserts the REQ signal.
2. After receiving the leading edge of the REQ signal, initiator drives the DB (7-0, P) signals to their desired values. The DB (7-0, P) signals are held valid for at least one deskew delay plus one cable skew delay plus one hold time delay after the assertion of the ACK signal.
3. Initiator delays at least one deskew delay plus a cable skew delay.
4. Initiator asserts the ACK signal for a minimum of one assertion period.
5. Initiator can negate the ACK signal and change or release the DB (7-0, P) signals.

6. Drive reads the DB (7-0, P) signals within one hold time of the transition of the ACK signal to true.
7. The drive waits at least the greater of these periods before again asserting the REQ signal:
  - a) A transfer period from the last transition of the REQ signal to true, or
  - b) A negation period from the last transition of the REQ signal to false.
8. The initiator waits at least the greater of the following periods before again asserting the ACK signal:
  - a) A transfer period from the last transition of the ACK signal to true, or
  - b) A negation period from the last transition of the ACK signal to false.

#### 3.5.5.3 Signal Restrictions Between Phases

When the SCSI bus is between two information transfer phases, the following restrictions apply to the SCSI bus signals:

- The BSY, SEL, REQ, and ACK signals do not change.
- The C/D, I/O, MSG, and DATA BUS signals can change.
- When changing the DATA BUS direction from out (initiator-driving) to in (drive-driving), the drive delays driving the DATA BUS by at least a data release delay plus one bus settle delay after asserting the I/O signal. The initiator releases the DATA BUS no later than a data release delay after the transition of the I/O signal to true.
- When switching the DATA BUS from in to out, the drive releases the DATA BUS no later than a deskew delay after negating the I/O signal.
- The ATN and RST signals can change as defined under the descriptions for the attention condition (Section 3.6.1) and reset condition (Section 3.6.2).

#### 3.5.5.4 STATUS Phase

The tape drive enters the status phase just once per command unless a retry is requested by the initiator. The only exception is during error cases when the device goes immediately to bus free, as defined in the ANSI SCSI-2 specification.

Status bytes the tape drive can return are listed in the following table:

Table 3–6 Status Bytes

Status Bytes Returned from Tape Drive	Definition
GOOD (00h)	This status indicates that the drive successfully completed the command.
CHECK CONDITION (02h)	A contingent allegiance condition occurred. The REQUEST SENSE command should be sent following this status to determine the nature of the event.
BUSY (08h)	Target is busy. This status is returned whenever the device is unable to accept a command from an otherwise acceptable initiator. The initiator should reissue the command at a later time.
INTERMEDIATE GOOD (10h)	This status is returned instead of GOOD for commands issued with the LINK bit set = 1. Following the return of this status, the drive proceeds to the COMMAND phase for the transfer of the next linked command.
RESERVATION CONFLICT (18h)	This status is returned by the drive whenever a SCSI device attempts to access the drive when it has been reserved for another initiator with a RESERVE UNIT command.
COMMAND TERMINATED (22h)	This status is returned for a command that was terminated via a TERMINATE I/O PROCESS message. This status also indicates that a contingent allegiance condition has occurred.

**NOTES**

In contrast to the BUSY status condition, the DRIVE NOT READY Sense Key is returned as part of the Sense data following a REQUEST SENSE command and indicates that a media access command has been issued but that the media is not ready to be accessed. For example, the tape cartridge is not installed, the tape medium has been unloaded, the tape drive is currently initializing the tape medium to prepare it for access, etc.

In the DRIVE NOT READY state, the initiator cannot perform any operation that would cause tape motion (READ, WRITE, VERIFY, for example). These commands return a CHECK CONDITION status with a DRIVE NOT READY sense key. The initiator may execute commands that do not require tape motion or access to the tape medium, and a GOOD status may be the result.

### **3.6 SCSI BUS CONDITIONS**

The SCSI bus has two asynchronous conditions: Attention and Reset.

#### **3.6.1 Attention Condition**

The attention condition informs a drive that an initiator has a message ready. The drive gets the message by performing a MESSAGE OUT phase. The attention condition requires the following timing:

- The initiator creates the attention condition by asserting ATN at any time except during the ARBITRATION or BUS FREE phases.
- The initiator negates the ATN signal at least two deskew delays before asserting the ACK signal while transferring the last byte of the message.
- If the drive detects that the initiator failed to meet this requirement, then the drive goes to BUS FREE.
- Before transition to a new bus phase, the initiator asserts the ATN signal, then waits at least two deskew delays before negating the ACK signal for the last byte transferred in the current bus phase. Asserting the ATN signal later cannot be honored until a later bus phase and then cannot result in the expected action.

The drive responds with MESSAGE OUT as described in the following table:

Table 3-7 Drive MESSAGE OUT Phase Response

ATN Signal True in Phase...	The Drive Enters MESSAGE OUT...
COMMAND	After transferring part or all of the command descriptor block bytes.
DATA	At the drive's earliest convenience (often on a logical block boundary). The initiator continues REQ/ACK handshakes until it detects the phase change.
STATUS	After the status byte has been acknowledged by the initiator.
MESSAGE IN	Before it sends another message. This permits a MESSAGE PARITY ERROR message from the initiator to be associated with the appropriate message.
SELECTION <sup>1</sup>	Immediately after that SELECTION phase.
RESELECTION <sup>2</sup>	After the drive has sent its IDENTIFY message for that RESELECTION phase.

<sup>1</sup> Before the initiator releases BSY, provided the initiator asserted ATN.

<sup>2</sup> The initiator should only assert the ATN signal during a RESELECTION phase to transmit a BUS DEVICE RESET or DISCONNECT message.

The initiator keeps the ATN signal asserted if more than one byte is to be transferred. The initiator can negate the ATN signal at any time, except it does not negate the ATN signal while the ACK signal is asserted during a MESSAGE OUT phase. Normally, the initiator negates the ATN signal while the REQ signal is true and the ACK signal is false during the last REQ/ACK handshake of the MESSAGE OUT phase.

### 3.6.2 Reset Condition

The tape drive responds to power-on and/or bus reset conditions as described:

- All tape drive SCSI lines assert high impedance when the tape drive is powered off.
- The drive does not generate any spurious signals on the SCSI bus when the drive is powered on.
- Within five (5) seconds of power-on, and within 250 milliseconds (typically under 4 milliseconds) after a bus reset, the tape drive responds to SCSI bus selections and returns the appropriate normal responses. Tape motion

commands are returned with Check Condition status, Sense Key of Not Ready, until the medium has been made ready.

- The tape medium is rewound to Beginning of Partition (BOP, i.e., Beginning of Tape [BOT]).

Note that the tape drive does not implement the hard reset alternative for bus RESET processing.

The tape drive recognizes multiple bus resets in succession as well as bus resets of arbitrarily long duration (powering on conditions). It recovers within the time limits specified above following the last bus reset.

### 3.6.3 Queued Unit Attentions

Queued Unit Attentions are implemented on the tape drive and are maintained separately for each valid LUN for each initiator. Unit Attentions are created as a result of the following circumstances:

- Power on
- Bus reset
- Bus device reset message
- When the media may have changed asynchronously
- When another initiator has changed the mode parameters
- When a firmware (microcode) update has completed

Two (2) queued Unit Attentions are not unusual. For example, if a drive is powered up and a cartridge is loaded, “power up” and “not ready to ready transition” Unit Attention messages are created. Due to a limited number of Unit Attention buffers, if an initiator does not clear Unit Attentions queued for it, the tape drive at some point stops generating new Unit Attention messages for the Initiator-Logical Unit (I-L) combination (existing messages remain queued).

A LOAD command does not generate a Unit Attention message for the initiator that issued the command, since the transition to ready is synchronous.



## Chapter 4

# MESSAGES

---

*The SCSI message system allows communication between an initiator and the drive for interface management and command qualification. Messages can be originated by either the initiator or the drive. This section contains a detailed description of the messages supported by the drives.*

### 4.1 MESSAGE FORMAT

A message can be one or more bytes in length. One or more messages can be sent during a single MESSAGE phase, but a message cannot be split over MESSAGE phases. The initiator is required to end the MESSAGE OUT phase (by negating ATN) when it sends certain messages that are identified in Table 4-2.

When a connection to the drive is established (i.e., the drive is selected with ATN asserted), the first message byte passed by the initiator must be either an IDENTIFY, ABORT, or BUS DEVICE RESET message. If not, the drive discards the message, saves no status information, and goes to the BUS FREE phase.

If an initiator supplies an unsupported message (for example, COMMAND COMPLETE or a reserved or undefined message code), the drive returns a MESSAGE REJECT message and continues where it left off (possibly returning to MESSAGE OUT if ATN is raised).

The first byte of the message, as defined in Table 4-1, determines the format of the message.

*Table 4-1 Message Format*

<b>Message Code</b>	<b>Message</b>
00h	One-byte message (COMMAND COMPLETE)
01h	Extended message
02h – 1Fh	One-byte message
20h – 2Fh	Two-byte message
40h – 7Fh	Reserved
80h – FFh	One-byte message (IDENTIFY)

The DLT 4000 tape drive supports the messages listed in Table 4-2. The message code and the direction of the message flow is also included in the table (In = target to initiator, Out = initiator to target).

Table 4–2 Supported Messages

Message	Message Code	Direction	
ABORT	06h		Out
BUS DEVICE RESET	0Ch		Out
COMMAND COMPLETE	00h	In	
DISCONNECT	04h	In	Out
EXTENDED MESSAGE (Synchronous Data Transfer Request, or SDTR) *	01h	In	Out
IDENTIFY	80h – FFh	In	Out
INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR	05h		Out
LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE	0Ah	In	
LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE (with flag)	0Bh	In	
MESSAGE PARITY ERROR	09h		Out
MESSAGE REJECT	07h	In	
NO OPERATION	08h		Out
RESTORE POINTERS	03h	In	
SAVE DATA POINTER	02h	In	

\* Extended message (Figure 4–1); described in Section 4.2.14.

Two-byte messages consist of two consecutive bytes. The value of the first byte, as defined in Table 4–1, determines which message is to be transmitted. The second byte is a parameter byte that is used as defined in the message description.

A value of 1 in the first byte indicates the beginning of a multiple-byte extended message. The minimum number of bytes sent for an extended message is three. The extended message format is shown in Figure 4–1 and the data fields are described in Table 4–3.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Extended Message (01h)							
1	Extended Message Length							
2	Extended Message Code							
3 to n-1	Extended Message Arguments							

Figure 4-1 Extended Message - Data Format

Table 4-3 Extended Message - Field Description

Field	Description
Extended Message Length	<p>This field specifies the length, in bytes, of the Extended Message Code plus the Extended Message Arguments that follow. Therefore, the total length of the message is equal to the Extended Message Length plus 2.</p> <p>A value of 0 for the Extended Message Length indicates that 256 bytes follow.</p>
Extended Message Code	<p>The drive supports some Extended Messages. They are:</p> <p>01h SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST</p> <p>80h – FFh Vendor Unique (for more information, refer to the section for the INQUIRY command in Chapter 5).</p>

## **4.2 SUPPORTED SCSI MESSAGES**

Following are descriptions of each of the messages supported by the drive.

### **4.2.1 ABORT Message (06h)**

This message is sent from the initiator to the target to clear the current I/O process on the selected unit. Buffered (cached) write operations are completed if possible. The target goes directly to the BUS FREE phase after successful receipt of this message. Current settings of MODE SELECT parameters and reservations are not affected. Commands, data, and status for other initiators are not affected.

This message can be sent to a logical unit that is not currently performing an operation for the initiator. If no unit has been selected, the target goes to BUS FREE phase and no commands, data, or status on the target are affected.

### **4.2.2 BUS DEVICE RESET Message (0Ch)**

The BUS DEVICE RESET message is sent from an initiator to direct the drive to clear all I/O processes on the drive. The message causes the drive to:

1. Flush the contents of cache to tape and go to the BUS FREE phase.
2. Execute a hard reset, leaving it as if a Bus Reset had occurred.

The drive creates a Unit Attention condition for all initiators after accepting and processing a Bus Device Reset message. The additional sense code is set to POWER ON, RESET, or BUS DEVICE RESET OCCURRED.

### **4.2.3 COMMAND COMPLETE Message (00h)**

The COMMAND COMPLETE message is sent by the drive to an initiator to indicate that an I/O process has completed and that valid status has been sent to the initiator. After successfully sending this message, the drive goes to the BUS FREE phase by releasing the BSY signal. The drive considers the message transmission successful when it detects the negation of ACK for the COMMAND COMPLETE message with the ATN signal false. If a COMMAND COMPLETE message is received by the tape drive, it is handled as an illegal message: the drive returns MESSAGE REJECT and enters its STATUS phase, reporting CHECK CONDITION with the sense key set to COMMAND ABORTED.

#### 4.2.4 DISCONNECT Message (04h)

The DISCONNECT message is sent from the drive to inform the initiator that the present connection is going to be broken (the drive plans to disconnect by releasing the BSY signal) and a later reconnect will be required to complete the current I/O process. The message does not cause the initiator to save the data pointer. After sending the message, the drive goes to the BUS FREE phase by releasing the BSY signal.

The DISCONNECT message can also be sent by the initiator to tell the drive to suspend the current phase and disconnect from the bus. The drive's response to and its handling of a DISCONNECT message are based on when, in the I/O process, the initiator introduces the DISCONNECT message. Table 4-4 summarizes the drive's response.

*Table 4-4 Drive Response to DISCONNECT Message*

<b>BUS Phase</b>	<b>Drive Response</b>
SELECTION	The drive discards the DISCONNECT message and goes to BUS FREE.
COMMAND	The drive discards the DISCONNECT message and goes to BUS FREE. The ATTENTION request is ignored while the Command Descriptor Block is fetched. The drive does not switch to MESSAGE OUT until the current DMA completes.
DATA	The ATTENTION request is ignored while the current data transfer completes; that is, the drive does not switch to MESSAGE OUT until after the current DMA completes. The drive returns a MESSAGE REJECT message and responds with CHECK CONDITION status, indicating the command aborted because of an invalid message.
STATUS	The drive sends a MESSAGE REJECT message, then sends COMMAND COMPLETE.
MESSAGE IN	The drive sends a MESSAGE REJECT message and switches to the BUS FREE phase.

### 4.2.5 IDENTIFY Message (80h - FFh)

The IDENTIFY message is sent by either the initiator or the drive to establish or re-establish the physical connection path between an initiator and target for a particular logical unit, under the conditions listed below. Figure 4–2 shows the format of the IDENTIFY message and Table 4–5 describes the data field contents.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
	Identify	DiscPriv	LUNTAR	Reserved		LUNTRAN		

*Figure 4–2 IDENTIFY Message - Data Format*

*Table 4–5 IDENTIFY Message - Field Description*

Field	Description
Identify	The Identify bit must be set to 1. This identifies the message as an IDENTIFY message.
DiscPriv	Disconnect Privilege. The DiscPriv can be 0, provided that no other I/O process is currently active in the drive. If not set to 1 and other I/O processes are currently active in the drive, the drive returns BUSY status.
LUNTAR	The Logical Unit/Target Routine (LUNTAR) field must be set to zero. The drive supports a single Logical Unit Number (LUN 0 ). A LUNTAR bit of one causes the drive to send a MESSAGE REJECT message and switch to the BUS FREE phase.
Reserved	The Reserved bits must be zero. If a Reserved bit is non-zero, the drive returns a MESSAGE REJECT message and switches to the BUS FREE phase.
LUNTRN	Logical Unit Number.

#### 4.2.6 INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR Message (05h)

The INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR message is sent from an initiator to inform the drive that an error has occurred that does not preclude the drive from retrying the operation (a bus parity error, for example). The source of the error may either be related to previous activities on the SCSI bus or may be only drive-related. When received, the tape drive attempts to re-transfer the last command, data, or status bytes by using the RESTORE POINTER message mechanism.

The drive's response to and its handling of an INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR message are based on when, in the I/O process, the initiator introduces the message. Table 4-6 summarizes the drive's response.

*Table 4-6 Drive Response to INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR Message*

<b>BUS Phase</b>	<b>Drive Response</b>
SELECTION	The drive discards the INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR message and then goes to the BUS FREE phase.
COMMAND	The drive discards any Command Descriptor Block bytes fetched from the initiator, sets the Sense Key to ABORTED COMMAND, sets the Additional Sense Code to INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR MESSAGE RECEIVED. It sends the CHECK CONDITION status and the COMMAND COMPLETE message and then goes to the BUS FREE phase.
DATA	The drive discards the INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR message and sets the Sense Key to ABORTED COMMAND, sets the Additional Sense Code to INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR MESSAGE RECEIVED. It sends the CHECK CONDITION status and the COMMAND COMPLETE message and then goes to the BUS FREE phase.
STATUS	The drive sends a RESTORE POINTERS message, returns to the STATUS phase, resends the STATUS command, and continues the I/O process.
MESSAGE IN	The drive discards the INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR message and sets the Sense Key to ABORTED COMMAND, sets the Additional Sense Code to INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR MESSAGE RECEIVED. It sends the CHECK CONDITION status and the COMMAND COMPLETE message and then goes to the BUS FREE phase.



#### **4.2.7 LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE Message (0Ah)**

This message is sent from a target to an initiator to indicate that the execution of a linked command (with the FLAG bit set to zero) is complete and that status has been sent. The initiator then sets the pointers to the initial state for the next command.

If received by a target, this message is handled as an illegal message; the drive enters the MESSAGE IN phase and returns MESSAGE REJECT.

#### **4.2.8 LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE, with Flag Message (0Ah)**

This message is sent from a target to an initiator to indicate that the execution of a linked command (with the FLAG bit set to one) is complete and that status has been sent.

#### **4.2.9 MESSAGE PARITY ERROR Message (09h)**

This message is sent from the initiator to tell the drive that the last message byte the drive passed on to the initiator contained a parity error.

To indicate that it intends to send the message, the initiator sets the ATN signal before it releases ACK for the REQ/ACK handshake of the message that has the parity error. This provides an interlock so that the target can determine which message has the parity error. If the target receives this message under any other condition, it proceeds directly to the BUS FREE state by releasing the BSY signal, signifying a catastrophic error.

The target's response to this message is to switch to the MESSAGE IN phase and re-send from the beginning all the bytes of the message that precipitated the MESSAGE PARITY ERROR message.

#### **4.2.10 MESSAGE REJECT Message (07h)**

This message is sent from the initiator or target to indicate that the last message received was inappropriate or has not been implemented.

To indicate its intention to send this message, the initiator asserts the ATN signal before it releases ACK for the REQ/ACK handshake of the message that is to be rejected. MESSAGE REJECT is issued in response to any message the drive considers to be illegal or not supported. When sending to the initiator, the tape drive does so before requesting any additional message bytes.

#### **4.2.11 NO OPERATION Message (08h)**

If a target requests a message, the initiator sends a NO OPERATION message if it does not currently have any other valid message to send. The message is accepted when the drive is acting as a target and may be sent when it is an initiator. If a NO OPERATION message is received during a selection, the drive proceeds to the COMMAND phase (provided ATN does not continue as asserted); the NO OPERATION message is ignored by the tape drive.

#### **4.2.12 RESTORE POINTERS Message (03h)**

The RESTORE POINTERS message is sent from the drive to the initiator to direct the initiator to copy the most recently saved command, data, and status pointers for the I/O process to the corresponding current pointers. The command and status pointers are restored to the beginning of the present command and status areas. The data pointer is restored to the value at the beginning of the data area in the absence of a SAVE DATA POINTER message or to the value at the point at which the last SAVE DATA POINTER message occurred for that logical unit.

When the RESTORE POINTERS message is received as a target, the target switches to the message in phase and returns MESSAGE REJECT.

#### **4.2.13 SAVE DATA POINTER Message (02h)**

The SAVE DATA POINTER message is sent from the drive to direct the initiator to copy the current data pointer to the saved data pointer for the current I/O process.

When functioning as a target, the tape drive sends this message before a disconnect during a data transfer. It does not send a SAVE DATA POINTER message if it intends to move directly to STATUS phase. When received as a target, it switches to message in phase and returns MESSAGE REJECT.

#### **4.2.14 SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER REQUEST Message (01h)**

This extended message allows the target and initiator to agree on the values of the parameters relevant to synchronous transfers. The tape drive will not initiate the Synchronous Data Transfer Request message; it relies on the initiator to do so. The Synchronous Data Transfer Request command has the format shown in Figure 4-3.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Extended Message Identifier (01h) (Figure 4-1)							
1	Length (03h)							
2	Message Code (01h)							
3	Transfer Period: Min. = 50 (32h)							
4	Transfer REQ/ACK Offset: Max. = 15							

*Figure 4-3 Synchronous Data Transfer Request Message - Data Format*

**NOTE**

The tape drive supports initiating synchronous transfer negotiations with the host, but this feature is disabled by default. To enable it, set the MODE SELECT VU ERROM parameter EnalnitSyncNeg.



## Chapter 5

# SCSI COMMANDS

---

*This chapter describes the SCSI protocol features implemented in the DLT 4000 tape drive. Note that the sections included in this chapter do not fully reiterate every ANSI SCSI message, option, and/or command code specification; the sections do describe the supported commands, messages, options, and error recovery procedures.*

### 5.1 OVERVIEW OF COMMAND AND STATUS PROCESSING

The Quantum DLT 4000 tape drive supports the SCSI commands listed in Table 5-1. The subsection of this chapter that details each of the SCSI commands is listed in the “Section” column.

*Table 5-1 Supported SCSI Commands*

Command	Operation Code	Section
ERASE	19h	5.3
INQUIRY	12h	5.4
LOAD UNLOAD	1Bh	5.5
LOCATE	2Bh	5.6
LOG SELECT	4Ch	5.7
LOG SENSE	4Dh	5.8
MODE SELECT (6 / 10)	15h / 55h	5.9
MODE SENSE (6 / 10))	1Ah / 5Ah	5.10
PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL	1Eh	5.11
READ	08h	5.12
READ BLOCK LIMITS	05h	5.13
READ BUFFER	3Ch	5.14
READ POSITION	34h	5.15

*Table 5-1 Supported SCSI Commands (continued)*

<b>Command</b>	<b>Operation Code</b>	<b>Section</b>
RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS	1Ch	5.16
RELEASE UNIT	17h	5.17
REPORT LUNS	A0h	5.18
REQUEST SENSE	03h	5.19
RESERVE UNIT	16h	5.20
REWIND	01h	5.21
SEND DIAGNOSTIC	1Dh	5.22
SPACE	11h	5.23
TEST UNIT READY	00h	5.24
VERIFY	13h	5.25
WRITE	0Ah	5.26
WRITE BUFFER	3Bh	5.27
WRITE FILEMARKS	10h	5.28

**NOTES**

1. Relative Addressing is not supported by the tape drive. Therefore, in all I/O commands, the RelAdr bit must be 0.
2. RESERVE UNIT and RELEASE UNIT by Logical Unit Number are supported, as are third-party reservations. Extent reservations are not supported.
3. The RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS and SEND DIAGNOSTIC DATA commands implement vendor-unique pages to test the drive during the manufacturing process. It is recommended that initiators specify only the non-page format variants of these commands (PF=0), except for page 0x40.
4. The DLT tape drive does not act as an initiator on the SCSI bus. Therefore, the drive will not 1) generate unsolicited interrupts to the host, 2) initiate its own SCSI commands, or 3) assert bus reset.
5. Linked commands are supported.
6. Untagged queuing is supported.

**5.1.1 SCSI Pointers**

SCSI architecture provides a set of three pointers (called saved pointers) for each I/O process. The three pointers are: Command, Status, and Data. When an I/O process becomes active, the three saved pointers are copied to the initiator as current pointers. There is only one set of current pointers in the initiator at one time. The current pointers point to the next command, data, or status byte to be transferred between the initiator's memory and the drive. The saved and current pointers reside in the initiator.

The saved command pointer always points to the start of the Command Descriptor Block for the I/O process. The saved status pointer always points to the start of the status area of the I/O process. The saved data pointer always points to the start of the data area until the drive sends a SAVE DATA POINTER message for the I/O process back to the initiator.

In response to the SAVE DATA POINTER message, the initiator stores the value of the current data pointer into the saved data pointer for that I/O process. The drive can restore the current pointer from the saved pointer value for the active I/O process by sending a RESTORE POINTERS message to the initiator. The initiator then copies the set of saved pointers into the set of current pointers. Whenever a drive disconnects from the SCSI Bus, only the set of saved pointers is retained in the initiator. The set of current pointers is restored from the set of saved pointers when the I/O process is reconnected.

5.1.2 Command Descriptor Block

An initiator communicates with the drive by sending a 6- or 10-byte Command Descriptor Block that contains the parameters for the specific command. The SCSI command's operation code is always the first byte in the Command Descriptor Block and a control field is the last byte. For some commands, the Command Descriptor Block is accompanied by a list of parameters sent during the DATA OUT phase. Figure 5–1 shows the format of a typical 6-byte Command Descriptor Block. Table 5-2 contains a description of the Command Descriptor Block fields.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code							
1	Logical Unit Number (LUN)			(MSB)	Logical Block Address (LBA)			
2 - 3	Logical Block Address (LBA) (LSB)							
4	Transfer Length, Parameter List Length, or Allocation Length							
5	Control							

NOTE: Unless otherwise specified, all reserved bits indicated in the commands are 0.

Figure 5–1 Typical Command Descriptor Block - Data Format



Table 5-2 Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions

Field	Description
Operation Code	The operation code specifies the command being requested. The list of supported SCSI commands and their operation codes are contained in Table 5-1.
Logical Unit Number	The Logical Unit Number contains the number of the device being addressed. It must be set to 0. The Logical Unit Number is ignored if the Command Descriptor Block is preceded by an IDENTIFY Message.
Logical Block Address	<p>The 6-byte READ, SEEK, and WRITE Command Descriptor Blocks contain a 21-bit Logical Block Address. The 10-byte READ, SEEK, and WRITE Command Descriptor Blocks contain a 32-bit Logical Block Address.</p> <p>Commands that require additional parameter data specify the length of the Logical Block Address that is needed. See the specific command descriptions for more detailed information.</p> <p>Relative Addressing indicates a technique used to determine the next Logical Block Address to be operated on. The drive does not support Relative Addressing. It defaults to a value of 0, which specifies that the Logical Block Address specifies the first logical block of a range of logical blocks to be operated on by the command.</p>
Transfer Length	The transfer length field normally specifies the number of blocks to be transferred between the initiator and the drive. For several commands, the transfer length indicates the number of bytes (not blocks) to be sent. For these commands, this field may be identified by a different name.
Parameter List Length	The Parameter List Length is used to specify the number of bytes sent during the DATA OUT phase. This field is typically used for parameters that are sent to a drive (for example, mode, diagnostic, and log parameters). A parameter list length of 0 indicates that no data is to be transferred.
Allocation Length	<p>The Allocation Length field specifies the number of bytes that the initiator has allocated for returned data. The Allocation Length is used to limit the amount of data returned to the initiator.</p> <p>An Allocation Length of 0 indicates that no data is to be transferred from the drive to the initiator. The drive terminates the DATA IN phase when the specified number of bytes have been transferred to the initiator or when all available data has been transferred, whichever is less.</p>

Table 5–2 Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions (continued)

Field	Description
Control Field	The Control Field is the last byte of every command descriptor block. Its format is shown in Figure 5–2 and it contains the Flag and Link bits. Use of these bits is initiator-dependent. Setting the Link bit = 1 provides an automatic link to the next command, bypassing the usual ARBITRATION, SELECTION, and MESSAGE OUT phases that would normally occur between commands. Other bits in the Control Field are considered to be reserved.
Relative Address (RelAdr)	Must be 0 (not supported).

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
5	Vendor Specific		Reserved				Flag	Link

Figure 5–2 Command Descriptor Block Control Field - Data Format

Table 5–3 Command Descriptor Block Control Field - Field Descriptions

Field	Description
Vendor Specific Bits	These bits must be 0.
Flag Bit	The Flag bit is used in conjunction with the Link bit to notify the initiator in an expedient manner that a command has been completed.
Link Bit	<p>A Link bit set to 1 indicates that the initiator requests continuation of a task (an I/O process) across two or more SCSI commands.</p> <p>If the Link bit is 1 and the Flag bit is 0, and the task completes successfully, the drive continues the task and returns a status of INTERMEDIATE and a LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE message.</p> <p>If the Link bit and the Flag bit within a Control word are both set to 1, and the drive complete a command with a status of INTERMEDIATE, the drive returns a LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE message (with Flag).</p>

### 5.1.3 Status/Error Reporting

SCSI message-level errors are communicated by messages that are defined specifically for that purpose (for example, MESSAGE PARITY ERROR, MESSAGE REJECT). Message-level errors are also handled by drive-managed retries. Refer to Chapter 4 for more detailed message-handling information.

SCSI command-level errors are communicated by a status code that is returned by the drive during the STATUS phase. This phase occurs at the end of each command, unless the command is terminated by one of the following events:

- ABORT message
- BUS DEVICE RESET message
- Hard reset condition
- Unexpected disconnect

The status code is contained in bits 1 through 5 of the status byte. Bits 0, 6, and 7 are reserved. Table 5–4 describes the status codes returned by the drive.

#### **NOTE**

In contrast to the BUSY status condition, the DRIVE NOT READY Sense Key is returned as part of the Sense data following a REQUEST SENSE command and indicates that a media access command has been issued and the medium is not ready to be accessed. For example, the medium is not installed, the medium has been unloaded, and the drive is currently initializing the medium to prepare it for access).

*Table 5–4 Status Codes*

Status Code	Definition	Meaning
00h	GOOD	The drive successfully completed the command.
02h	CHECK CONDITION	A Contingent Allegiance condition occurred.
08h	BUSY	The drive cannot service the command at the moment, and its Command Descriptor Block has been discarded. The initiator can retry the command at a later time.
10h	INTERMEDIATE GOOD	This status is returned instead of a GOOD status for commands issued with the LINK bit set. Following the return of this status, the drive proceeds to the COMMAND phase for the transfer of the next linked command.
18h	RESERVATION CONFLICT	Another initiator has reserved the drive when it has been reserved for another initiator with a RESERVE UNIT command (this status is never returned for INQUIRY or REQUEST SENSE commands).
28h	QUEUE FULL	The drive cannot service the command at the moment, and its Command Descriptor Block has been discarded. (Returned for a tagged command when all of the drive's internal command buffers are in use, for instance.)

#### 5.1.4 DATA-Phase Command Components

Many of the SCSI commands cause data to be transferred between the initiator and the drive. The content and characteristics of this data are command-dependent. Table 5–5 lists the information transmitted for all of the commands.

The "Length in CDB" column of Table 5–6 identifies the Command Descriptor Block field used by the drive to determine how much command-related data are to be transferred. The units (bytes or logical blocks) for the different Length fields are implied by the Length Field Name as follows:

Table 5-5 Length Field Name Units

Field Name	Units Implied
Allocation Length	Bytes of data the drive is allowed to send to the initiator
Parameter List Length	Bytes of data the initiator has available for the drive
Transfer Length	Logical number of data blocks or data bytes the initiator wants transferred or verified
Byte Transfer Length	Bytes of data the initiator wants transferred

The DATA OUT column in Table 5-6 lists the information passed to the drive by the initiator as part of the command. The DATA IN column lists the information sent to the initiator by the drive. Numbers in parentheses after an item indicate the item's length in bytes. In some cases, additional length information is communicated during the DATA phase.

Table 5-6 DATA-Phase Command Contents

Command	Length in CDB	Data Out (To Drive)	Data In (To Initiator)
ERASE	0		
INQUIRY	Allocation	---	Standard Inquiry or a Vital Product Data page
LOAD UNLOAD	0	---	---
LOCATE	0	---	---
LOG SELECT	Parameter List (must be 0)	---	---
LOG SENSE	Allocation	---	Log Page
MODE SELECT (6)	Parameter List	Mode Parameter Header (4) Block Descriptor (8) Page(s)	---
MODE SENSE (6)	Allocation	---	Mode Parameter Header (4) Block Descriptor (8) Page(s)

Table 5-6 DATA-Phase Command Contents (continued)

Command	Length in CDB	Data Out (To Drive)	Data In (To Initiator)
PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL	0	---	---
READ (6)	Transfer	---	Data
READ BLOCK LIMITS	Allocation	---	Block Length Limits
READ BUFFER	Allocation	---	Buffer Offset and Allocation Length
READ POSITION	Allocation	---	Position Identifier or SCSI Logical Address
RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS	Allocation	---	Diagnostic Page
RELEASE UNIT	0	---	---
REPORT LUNS	Allocation	---	Supported LUNS List
REQUEST SENSE	Allocation	---	Sense Data (18)
RESERVE UNIT	0 (Extent List Option not supported)	---	---
REWIND	0	---	---
SEND DIAGNOSTIC	Parameter List	Diagnostic Page	---
SPACE	0	---	---
TEST UNIT READY	0	---	---
VERIFY	Transfer	Data	---
WRITE (6)	Transfer	Data	---
WRITE BUFFER	Parameter List	Microcode Image Data	---
WRITE FILEMARKS	---	---	---

### 5.1.5 Unit Attention Condition

Queued Unit Attentions are implemented on the Quantum DLT 4000 tape drive and are maintained separately for each valid LUN for each initiator. Unit Attentions are created in each of the following circumstances:

- At Power On
- At Bus Reset
- At Bus Device Reset message
- When the medium may have changed asynchronously
- When another initiator changes the Mode Parameters
- When a firmware (microcode) update has completed

Two queued Unit Attentions are not unusual. For example, if a unit is powered up and a tape cartridge is loaded, Power Up and Not-Ready to Ready Transition Unit Attentions are created. Due to the limited number of Unit Attention buffers, if an initiator does not clear Unit Attentions queued for it, at some point the tape drive stops generating new Unit Attentions for that initiator-logical unit combination (existing ones will be left queued, however).

A LOAD command does not generate a Unit Attention for the initiator that issued the command since the transition to Ready is synchronous.

### 5.1.6 Behavior at Power-On and SCSI Bus Reset

The following apply to the DLT 4000 tape drive's behavior at power-on and/or SCSI bus reset:

- When the Quantum DLT 4000 is powered up, all device SCSI lines are set to high impedance.
- The design of the DLT 4000 tape drive does not allow it to generate any spurious signals on the SCSI bus at power-on.
- Within five seconds of power-on, and within 250 milliseconds (typically under 4 milliseconds) after a SCSI bus reset, the DLT 4000 tape drive responds to SCSI bus selections and returns appropriate, normal responses. Tape motion commands will be returned with CHECK CONDITION status, Sense Key Not Ready, until the tape medium has been made ready.
- The tape drive implements the hard bus reset option.
- The tape medium is rewound to Beginning of Tape (BOT).

The DLT 4000 tape drive recognizes multiple, successive SCSI bus resets and SCSI bus resets of arbitrarily long duration. The tape drive recovers within the time limits specified above following the last SCSI bus reset.

### 5.1.7 Data Cache and Tape Write Interaction

The Quantum DLT 4000 drive contains a data cache that buffers blocks (records) until they are written to tape. This section describes when those blocks are written, or “flushed” to tape. A Mode Select parameter allows the data cache to be disabled (unbuffered mode). In this mode, every WRITE command causes data to be written to the tape medium before the STATUS byte and the COMMAND COMPLETE message are returned to the host.

<p style="text-align: center;"><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>Unbuffered mode is NOT recommended due to the poor performance that may result.</p>
---

The contents of the write data cache are written to the tape medium under the following circumstances:

- When two or more WRITE FILEMARKS commands are issued without intervening tape motion commands.
- When a WRITE 0 FILEMARKS command is issued.
- When data has been in the cache longer than the maximum time specified by the value of the Mode Parameter “Write Delay Time.”
- When a non-write type media access command is received (for example, SPACE, READ, UNLOAD).



## 5.2 SCSI COMMAND DESCRIPTIONS

The SCSI commands are presented in alphabetical order. Each command starts on a new, odd-numbered page. Because information about a particular command may span multiple pages, the command name is repeated, in *Italics*, at the top of every page that concerns that command. Blank pages in the chapter can be used for note-taking.

The SCSI command descriptions that make up the rest of Chapter 5 contain detailed information about each command supported by the Quantum DLT 4000 tape drive. Fields common to many of the SCSI commands are supported as follows:

<b>Name of Field:</b>	<b>How Field is Supported in SCSI Commands:</b>
Logical Unit Number	LUN for tape drive is 0.
Reserved	Reserved bits, fields, bytes, and code values are set aside for future standardization and must be set to 0. If the drive receives a command that contains non-zero bits in a reserved field or a reserved code value, the command is terminated with a CHECK CONDITION status and the sense key is set to ILLEGAL REQUEST.
RelAdr	Relative Address. Unused.

Explanations for those common fields are not repeated for every command in which they appear.

Throughout this manual, multiple bytes that contain information about specific command parameters are portrayed as shown in the example of the Parameter List Length field (bytes 7 and 8) of the Log Select command shown as follows:

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 - 6	(Bytes 0 – 6)							
7 - 8	(MSB) Parameter List Length (LSB)							

As shown, this sample indicates that the most significant bit (MSB) of the field is bit 7 of byte 7; the least significant bit (LSB) is bit 0 of byte 8.

This is an alternate, “shorthand” presentation for:

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 - 6	(Bytes 0 – 6)							
7	(MSB) Parameter List Length (LSB)							
8								

The shorthand version of presentation is used in this manual due to space constraints.

### 5.3 ERASE COMMAND (19H)

The ERASE command causes data on the tape medium to be erased. Any WRITE data currently held in buffer memory and not yet written to tape is written to tape before the ERASE command is executed. ERASE command must be issued while at BOT.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (19h)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Reserved			Immed	Long (1)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5-3 ERASE Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

*ERASE Command (19h) (continued)**Table 5-7 ERASE Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions*

Field	Description
Immed	Immediate. If the Immediate bit = 0, the target does not return status until the selected operation has completed.  If set to 1, status is returned as soon as the operation has been initiated.
Long	Must be set to 1. The Long bit controls the distance of tape to be erased. Filler and End of Data (EOD) blocks are written if needed, then the entire rest of the tape is erased.  <b>NOTE:</b> The ERASE command results in no operation for the tape drive unless the Long bit is set to 1. Issuing the ERASE command away from Beginning of Tape (BOT) is an ILLEGAL REQUEST.

## 5.4 INQUIRY COMMAND (12H)

The INQUIRY command allows the initiator to determine the kind of SCSI devices attached to its SCSI Bus. It causes a device that is attached to a SCSI Bus to return information about itself. The drive identifies itself as a Direct Access Storage Device that implements the SCSI-2 protocol. The drive does not need to access its tape medium to respond to the inquiry.

The drive can provide two categories of data in response to an INQUIRY command: Standard Inquiry Data and Vital Product Data. Standard Inquiry Data contains basic data about the drive, and Vital Product Data comprises several pages of additional data. Each Vital Product Data page requires a separate INQUIRY command from the initiator.

An INQUIRY command is not affected by, nor does it clear, a Unit Attention condition.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (12h)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Reserved			EVPD	
2	Page Code							
3	Reserved							
4	Allocation Length							
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5-4 INQUIRY Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

*INQUIRY Command (12h) (continued)**Table 5–8 INQUIRY Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions*

Field	Description
EVPD	Enable Vital Product Data. If 0, the drive returns the Standard Inquiry Data page. If 1, the drive returns the Vital Product Data page specified in Page Code.
Page Code	Specifies which Vital Product Data page is to be returned by the drive. This field must be 0 if EVPD is 0. A CHECK CONDITION with ILLEGAL REQUEST status is returned if this field specifies an unsupported page code. Table 5–9 lists the page codes for the Vital Product Pages supported by the drive.
Allocation Length	Specifies the number of bytes of inquiry information the drive is allowed to return to the initiator during the command's DATA IN phase. Error status is not returned if the value in this field truncates the requested information.

*Table 5–9 Vital Product Data - Page Codes*

Page Code	Description
00h	Supported Vital Product Pages Page
80h	Unit Serial Number Page
C0h	Code Build Information Page

**5.4.1 Standard Inquiry Data Page**

Figure 5–5 shows the format of the Standard Inquiry Data page returned by the drive.

*INQUIRY Command (12h) (continued)*

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Peripheral Qualifier			Peripheral Device Type				
1	RMB	Device Type Modifier						
2	ISO Version		ECMA Version			ANSI Version		
3	AENC	TrmIOP	Reserved		Response Data Format			
4	Additional Length = 33h							
5	Reserved							
6	Rsvd	MChngr	Reserved					
7	RelAdr	Wbus32	Wbus16	Sync	Linked	Rsvd	CmdQue	SftRe
8 - 15	Vendor Identification "Quantum "							
16 - 31	Product Identification "DLT4000 "							
32 - 35	Product Revision Level = "hhss"							
36 - 55	Vendor Unique Bytes							

*Figure 5–5 Standard Inquiry Data Page - Data Format*

*INQUIRY Command (12h) (continued)*

Table 5–10 contains field descriptions for the data returned by the drive.

*Table 5–10 Standard Inquiry Data Page - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Value	Description
Peripheral Qualifier	0	Non-zero if initiator selects an invalid logical unit (see below)
Peripheral Device Type	1	1 indicates that this is a sequential access device (see below). Note that the Peripheral Device Type entry for a medium changer is 8.
RMB	1	Removable Medium Bit. Set to 1.
Device Type Modifier	1	Set to 1 to specify a sequential access device.
ISO Version	0	International Standardization Organization Version level. Set to 0.
ECMA Version	0	European Computer Manufacturers Organization Version level. Set to 0.
ANSI Version	2	ANSI SCSI Level 2 (SCSI-2) is supported.
AENC	0	Asynchronous Event Notification is not supported.
TrmIop	0	Terminate I/O Process. The tape drive does not support the TERMINATE I/O PROCESS message.
Response Data Format	2	This Standard Inquiry Data is in SCSI-2 format.
Additional Length	33h	Tape drive uses this field to indicate the number of additional bytes of INQUIRY Response Data available.
Mchngr	-	Set to 1 if a Media Changer (Loader) is present and EEPROM parameter EnblngMedChgr is set to 1. This SCSI-3 bit indicates that the Read Element Status and Move Medium commands can be issued to the drive (LUN0). By default, this bit is set to 0 on the DLT 4000.
RelAdr	0	Relative Addressing is not supported.
WBus 32	0	Set to 0 since the drive does not support 32-bit transfer.
WBus 16	0	The WBus bit is 0 since the drive supports only 8-bit data transfer.



*INQUIRY Command (12h) (continued)**Table 5–10 Standard Inquiry Data Page - Field Descriptions (continued)*

Field Name	Value	Description
Sync	1	The drive supports Synchronous Data Transfers.
Linked	1	Linked Commands are supported.
CmdQue	0	The drive does not support Tagged Command Queuing.
SftRe	0	The drive implements the hard reset option in response to assertion of the SCSI Bus reset line.
Vendor Identification		The value in this field is "Quantum"
Product Identification		The value in this field is "DLT4000"
Product Revision Level		This field contains 4 bytes of ASCII data that provides the drive's software revision levels. The first two bytes are the version number of servo code. The second two bytes are the version number of the SCSI/read/write code. When a firmware update is performed on the DLT drive, this part of the revision level will change to reflect that update.
Vendor Specific		See Section 5.4.2 for details.
<b>NOTE:</b> Vendor Information, Product Identification, and Product Revision Level are returned as shown in Figure 5–5.		

**5.4.2 Vendor Unique Inquiry Data**

The following information can be used to precisely identify the revision of subsystem components.

*INQUIRY Command (12h) (continued)*

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
36	Product Family (4)				Released Firmware			
37	Firmware Major Version #							
38	Firmware Minor Version #							
39	EEPROM Format Major Version #							
40	EEPROM Format Minor Version #							
41	Firmware Personality							
42	Firmware Sub-Personality							
43	Firmware Subtype							
44	Controller Hardware Version #							
45	Drive EEPROM Version #							
46	Drive Hardware Version #							
47	Media Loader Firmware Version #							
48	Media Loader Hardware Version #							
49	Media Loader Mechanical Version #							
50	Media Loader Present Flag							
51	Library Present Flag							
52 - 55	Module Revision							

*Figure 5–6 INQUIRY Vendor Unique Bytes Definitions*

*INQUIRY Command (12h) (continued)**Table 5–11 Vendor Unique Inquiry Data Page - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description														
Product Family	<p>This field indicates the drive's data density as follows:</p> <table> <tr> <th>Bit</th><th>Drive Density</th></tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>Not Specified</td></tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>2.6 GB</td></tr> <tr> <td>2</td><td>6.0 GB</td></tr> <tr> <td>3</td><td>10.0 / 20.0 GB</td></tr> <tr> <td>4</td><td>20.0 / 40.0 GB</td></tr> <tr> <td>5</td><td>15.0 / 30.0 GB</td></tr> </table>	Bit	Drive Density	0	Not Specified	1	2.6 GB	2	6.0 GB	3	10.0 / 20.0 GB	4	20.0 / 40.0 GB	5	15.0 / 30.0 GB
Bit	Drive Density														
0	Not Specified														
1	2.6 GB														
2	6.0 GB														
3	10.0 / 20.0 GB														
4	20.0 / 40.0 GB														
5	15.0 / 30.0 GB														
Released Firmware	This flag differentiates between released and test versions of firmware. When set to 1, indicates released code (Vxxx); 0 indicates field test code (Txxx). Released code has no minor firmware version number (byte 38 = 0). Field test and engineering versions of code have non-zero minor firmware version numbers for tracking purposes.														
... Version #	These field display the various version numbers in binary, not ASCII														
Firmware Personality	Numeric indicator of firmware personality. For example, firmware personality of 4 indicates OEM family, 15 indicates OML family, and 18 indicates OMX family.														
Firmware Subpersonality	Set to 1, indicating standard SCSI device firmware.														
Loader Present	Set to 0 indicates no loader present. Non-zero indicates loader is present.														
Library Present	Set to 0 indicates no library present. Non-zero indicates library is present.														
Module Revision	A four byte ASCII string representing the revision level of the tape drive's module (the controller PCBA attached to the tape drive).														

*INQUIRY Command (12h) (continued)***5.4.3 Supported Vital Product Data Page (00h)**

The Supported Vital Product Data Pages page (Figure 5–7) provides a directory of the Vital Product Data Pages that are supported by the drive. The pages that are supported are:

- The Unit Serial Number Page (80h)
- The Firmware Build Information Page (C0h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Peripheral Qualifier			Peripheral Device Type				
1	Page Code (00h)							
2	Reserved							
3	Page Length (3 or more bytes)							
4	00h - (this page)							
5	80h - Unit Serial Number Page							
6	C0h - Firmware Build Information Page (VU)							

*Figure 5–7 Supported Vital Product Data Pages Page - Data Format*

*INQUIRY Command (12h) (continued)*

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Peripheral Qualifier			Peripheral Device Type				
1	Page Code (80h)							
2	Reserved							
3	Page Length (0Ah)							
4 - 13	Serial Number							

*Figure 5–8 Unit Serial Number Page - Data Format**Table 5–12 Unit Serial Number Page - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Serial Number	The serial number given is the serial number of the module or the drive. If the drive serial number is valid, then it is reported; otherwise, the module serial number is reported. The serial number can be found on the bar code label. The serial number is returned in ASCII.

*INQUIRY Command (12h) (continued)*

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Peripheral Qualifier			Peripheral Device Type				
1	Page Code (C0h)							
2	Reserved							
3	Page Length (20h)							
4 - 5	Servo Firmware Checksum							
6 - 7	Servo EEPROM Checksum							
8 - 11	Read/Write Firmware Checksum							
12 - 35	Read/Write Firmware Build Data							

*Figure 5–9 Firmware Build Information Page - Data Format**Table 5–13 Firmware Build Information Page - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
...Checksum	Servo Firmware, Servo EEPROM, and READ/WRITE Firmware checksums are given as binary numbers and are for positive firmware and EEPROM identification.
Firmware Build Date	Firmware Build Date is an ASCII string in the DD-MMM-YYYY HH:MM:SS format.

## 5.5 LOAD UNLOAD COMMAND (1BH)

The LOAD UNLOAD command tells the target to load or unload the tape media in the tape cartridge. If no cartridge is in the tape drive both LOAD and UNLOAD return a CHECK CONDITION status with a NOT READY sense key set. Likewise, if the drive has received an UNLOAD command with the Immediate bit set and then it receives another command that would require tape motion or if it receives a TEST UNIT READY command, the drive returns a CHECK CONDITION STATUS with a NOT READY sense key set.

### NOTES

Operation of the UNLOAD version of this command is different if a media loader is present.

Two modes of operation are possible if a media loader is configured. If none of the media loader-specific commands have been issued, the device operates in the sequential mode of operation described below. Once a media loader-specific command has been issued, however, the sequential mode of operation is disabled and the UNLOAD command becomes a NO OPERATION.

If the tape drive is in the default sequential mode of operation and an UNLOAD command is received by the subsystem, the current cartridge is unloaded and automatically moved to the magazine slot from which it was received. The cartridge from the next magazine slot (if the slot is not empty) automatically moves from the magazine into the drive, is loaded, and made ready. If the next magazine slot is empty, no CHECK CONDITION status is created.

When the cartridge is unloaded into the last magazine slot, the subsystem does not cycle back to slot 0. This prevents accidental overwriting of data when using a media loader subsystem in sequential auto-loading mode. The next cartridge in the cycle must be selected and loaded manually, or with a SCSI MOVE MEDIUM command.

*LOAD UNLOAD Command (1Bh) (continued)***NOTES**

The sequential loading feature of the loader can be enabled/disabled by modifying the ENALDRAUTOLD and DISLDRAUTOLDMC parameters of EEPROM (mode page 3Eh of the MODE SELECT command).

A media loader does not affect the tape drive's processing of the LOAD portion of the LOAD UNLOAD command.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (1Bh)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				Immed
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved					EOT	Re-Ten	Load
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5-10 LOAD UNLOAD Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*



---

**LOAD UNLOAD Command (1Bh) (continued)***Table 5-14 LOAD UNLOAD Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Immed	Immediate. If this bit is set to 1, status is returned as soon as the operation is started. If set to 0, status is returned after the operation has completed.
Re-Ten	Re-tension. Re-tension operations are not needed on the tape drive. This bit is ignored (i.e., "good" status, if bit is set to 1).
Load	<p>Load. When a cartridge is inserted, the tape medium is automatically loaded and positioned by the drive at Beginning of Medium (BOM). Logically, the drive is positioned at the beginning of Partition 0.</p> <p>If the Load bit is set to 1, and the medium is already loaded, no action is taken. If the medium was unloaded but the cartridge was not removed, a Load command causes the tape to be loaded to Beginning of Partition (BOP) again and made ready.</p> <p>If the Load bit is set to 0, and the medium is loaded, the drive writes any buffered data and filemarks to the tape and then rewinds the tape to BOM and unloads the medium back into the cartridge. The green Operate Handle indicator on the tape drive's faceplate illuminates and the cartridge can be removed from the tape drive. If the medium is already unloaded, no action is taken.</p>
EOT	End of Tape. This bit is ignored by the tape drive unless both the EOT and Load bits are set to 1, then the drive returns CHECK CONDITION, ILLEGAL REQUEST data.

---

## 5.6 LOCATE COMMAND (2Bh)

The LOCATE command is used to do high-speed positioning to the specified block address.

The READ POSITION command can be used to obtain the block address, when writing, when particular blocks of data (a data file, for example) are about to be written. The LOCATE command can then be used to position the tape back at the same logical position for high performance restore operations of particular blocks of data.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (2Bh)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Reserved		BT	CP	Immed
2	Reserved							
3 - 6	(MSB) Block Address (LSB)							
7	Reserved							
8	Partition							
9	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5-11 LOCATE Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

*LOCATE Command (2Bh) (continued)**Table 5-15 LOCATE Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions*

<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
BT	Block Type. The Block Type bit indicates how the Block Address field is interpreted. The first recorded object (block or filemark) is at address 0, and Block Addresses count both data blocks and filemarks.
CP	Change Partition. Since multiple partitions are not supported, this bit must be set to 0.
Immed	Immediate. If this bit is set to 1, status is returned as soon as the operation is started. If set to 0, status is returned after the operation has completed.
Block Address	The Block Address field defines the SCSI Logical Block Address to which the media will be positioned. These addresses start at address 0 and include data blocks and filemarks. They could also be considered an object address.
Partition	Not applicable (see Change Partition field above).

## 5.7 LOG SELECT COMMAND (4Ch)

The LOG SELECT command allows the host to manage statistical information maintained by the tape drive about its own hardware parameters or about the installed tape medium. The description should be read in conjunction with the description of the LOG SENSE command that follows it and provides the user with information about log page format, parameters, and supported pages.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (4Ch)							
1	Logical Unit Number (0)			Reserved			PCR	SP
2	PC		Reserved					
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7 - 8	(MSB) Parameter List Length (LSB)							
9	Unused		Reserved			Flag		Link

*Figure 5–12 LOG SELECT Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

*LOG SELECT Command (4Ch) (continued)**Table 5–16 LOG SELECT Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
PCR	Parameter Code Reset. If this bit is set to 1 and the parameter list length is set to 0, all accumulated values of page codes 2, 3, and 32 are set to 0 and all threshold values are set to default. If PCR is set to 1 and the parameter list length is set to a non-zero value, the command terminates with a CHECK CONDITION status with sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and an Additional Sense Code (ASC) of INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
SP	Save Page. Not supported, must be set to 0. If for some reason the Save Page bit is set, the command terminates with a CHECK CONDITION status with a sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and an ASC of INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
PC	<p>Page Control. This field defines the type of parameter values to be selected:</p> <p><b><u>PC- Type of Parameter Values</u></b></p> <p>00b - Current Threshold Values</p> <p>01b - Current Cumulative Values</p> <p>10b - Default Threshold Values</p> <p>11b - Default Cumulative Values</p> <p>All of these types of values are changeable using LOG SELECT.</p> <p>When the PC field is set to 00b or 01b and the Parameter List Length is set to 0, the command terminates with a CHECK CONDITION status, Sense Key of ILLEGAL REQUEST, and ASC of INVALID FIELD IN CDB. This occurs because modification of Current Threshold Values and Current Cumulative Values is not supported.</p> <p>When the PC field is set to 10b and the Parameter List Length field is set to 10b, then all Current Threshold Values are reset to the Default Threshold Values. This is equivalent to no change, since <b><i>Threshold Values cannot be modified.</i></b></p> <p>When the PC field is set to 11b and the Parameter List Length field is set to 0, then all Current Cumulative Values are reset to the Default Cumulative Values. This is equivalent to clearing all log pages that can be cleared.</p>

## LOG SELECT Command (4Ch) (continued)

Table 5–16 LOG SELECT Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions (continued)

Field Name	Description
Parameter List Length	This field specifies the length, in bytes, of the LOG SELECT parameter list to be transferred from the initiator to the target during the DATA OUT phase. A parameter list length of 0 indicates that no data is to be transferred. This condition is not considered an error.

### 5.7.1 Log Detection Summary in LOG SELECT Command Descriptor Block

The following conditions constitute errors that are detected by the drive in relation to the CDB. The request sense data is set to ILLEGAL REQUEST, INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

The conditions that constitute errors are:

- PCR bit is set to 1 and parameter list is not set to 0.
- SP bit is set to 1
- A parameter list length that would cause a parameter within a valid page to be truncated or otherwise incompletely initialized.

### 5.7.2 Operation of LOG SELECT

The LOG SELECT command allows the initiator to modify and initialize parameters within the logs supported by the tape drive.

There are two ways to initialize the log parameters.

1. Set the PCR bit in the LOG SELECT CDB; this clears all parameters.
2. Specify the log page and parameter values as the log parameters to clear individual pages. The following pages can be cleared using this method:

<u>Page Code</u>	<u>Page Description</u>
02h	Write Error Counter Page
03h	Read Error Counter Page
32h	Compression Ratio Page

**LOG SELECT Command (4Ch) (continued)**

If multiple pages are sent during the DATA OUT phase, they must be sent in ascending order according to page code. Otherwise, the command terminates with a CHECK CONDITION status, sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST, and additional sense code set to INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST. The same status is returned if an unsupported Page Code appears in any header or if the specified page cannot be cleared.

**5.7.3 LOG SELECT Page Format**

Each log page begins with a 4-byte header followed by  $n$  number of log parameter blocks (one block for each parameter code). Each block, except for parameter code 05h is comprised of 8 bytes. The parameter block for code 05h is 12 bytes.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page Code					
1	Reserved							
2 - 3	(MSB) Page Length (LSB)							

*Figure 5-13 LOG SELECT Log Page Header Format*

*Table 5-17 LOG SELECT Log Page Header Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Page Code	The Page Code specifies for which Log Page this LOG SELECT command is directed.
Page Length	The Page Length field specifies the total number of bytes contained in this log page, not including the four bytes that make up the header.

*LOG SELECT Command (4Ch) (continued)*

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 - 1	(MSB) Parameter Code (LSB)							
2	DU	DS	TSD	ETC	TMC	Rsvd	LP	
3	Parameter Length							
4 - 7	(MSB) Parameter Value (LSB)							

**NOTE:** Byte 2 is also referred to the Parameter Control Byte.

*Figure 5-14 LOG SELECT Log Parameters Format*

*Table 5-18 LOG SELECT Log Parameters Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Parameter Code	Parameter Codes supported for the READ/WRITE error counter pages are as follows:  <div> <div>Parameter Code</div> <div>-Descriptions</div> </div> 00h - Errors corrected with substantial delays 01h - Errors corrected with possible delays 02h - Total rewrites or rereads 03h - Total errors corrected 04h - Total times correction algorithm processed 05h - Total bytes processed 06h - Total uncorrected errors 8000h - Vendor Unique



*LOG SELECT Command (4Ch) (continued)**Table 5–18 LOG SELECT Log Parameters Field Descriptions (continued)*

Field Name	Description
Parameter Code (continued)	<b>Note:</b> Parameter codes 00h, 01h, and 04h always have a value of 0. Parameter value for 05h is 8 bytes; the parameter length is set to 8.
DU	Disable Update. This bit is not defined for LOG SELECT; the target ignores any value in DU.
DS	Disable Save. Not supported. DS and Target Save Disable (TSD) must be set to 1. If DS and/or TSD are set to 0, command terminates with CHECK CONDITION status, sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST, and additional sense code set to INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.
TSD	Target Save Disable. Not supported. TDS and DS must be set to 1. If TSD and/or DS are set to 0, command terminates with CHECK CONDITION status, sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST, and additional sense code set to INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.
ETC	Enable Threshold Comparison. When set to 1, drive performs a comparison with threshold values once the cumulative value is updated. Comparison criteria are defined in Threshold Met Criteria (TMC). If the comparison is met and the RLEC bit of MODE SELECT / SENSE Control Page is set to 1, then a UNIT ATTENTION is generated for all initiators. The additional sense code is set to THRESHOLD CONDITION MET. If the RLEC bit is 0 and the comparison is met, then UNIT ATTENTION is not generated.
TMC	<p>Threshold Met Criteria. Once the criteria specified in this field is met and the ETC bit is 1 and the RLEC bit in MODE SENSE / SELECT Control Page is set to 1, then UNIT ATTENTION is generated for all initiators.</p> <p>The criteria for comparison are:</p> <p><b>Code - Basis of Comparison</b></p> <p>00b - Every update of the cumulative value</p> <p>01b - Cumulative value equal to threshold value</p> <p>10b - Cumulative value not equal to threshold value</p> <p>11b - Cumulative value greater than threshold value</p> <p>The Default Threshold Values are the maximum values that each parameter can attain.</p>

**LOG SELECT Command (4Ch) (continued)***Table 5-18 LOG SELECT Log Parameters Field Descriptions (continued)*

Field Name	Description
TMC (cont.)	<p>The Current Cumulative Values are the values computed since the last reset of the device (either via power-cycle, BUS DEVICE RESET, or SCSI RESET).</p> <p>The Default Cumulative Values are the values to which each parameter is initialized at a reset condition. Default values are zero.</p> <p>By default, Current Threshold Values = Default Threshold Values.</p> <p>Note that all types of parameter values are changeable via LOG SELECT.</p>
LP	List Parameter. This bit should always be set to 0 to indicate parameter codes are treated as data counters.
Parameter Length	This field specifies the number of bytes of the parameter value.
Parameter Value	This field indicates the actual value of this log parameter.

**5.7.4 Error Detection Summary in LOG SELECT Pages**

The host issues a LOG SENSE command to initialize host-resident software that allows determination of:

- The log pages used by the drive
- The parameter codes and length of each parameter

The following conditions constitute errors in the parameter block that cause the drive to return CHECK CONDITION with sense data set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional send code INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST:

- A page header is received with unsupported page codes
- An incorrect log page length is specified in the page header
- An illegal parameter code is contained in a valid page code
- Parameter codes for a supported page are not sent in ascending order
- The LP bit is set to 1 in the parameter control byte
- The DS bit is set to 0 in the parameter control byte
- The TSD bit is set to 0 in the parameter control byte

## 5.8 LOG SENSE COMMAND (4DH)

The LOG SENSE command allows the host to retrieve statistical information maintained by the tape drive about its own hardware parameters or about the installed tape medium. It is a complementary command to LOG SELECT.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (4Dh)							
1	Logical Unit Number (0)			Reserved			PPC	SP(0)
2	PC		Page Code					
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5 - 6	(MSB) Parameter Pointer (LSB)							
7 - 8	(MSB) Allocation Length (LSB)							
9	Unused		Reserved			Flag		Link

*Figure 5-15 LOG SENSE Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

*LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)**Table 5–19 LOG SENSE Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
PPC	<p>Parameter Pointer Control. This bit must be set to 0. A PPC of 0 indicates that the parameter data requested from the device starts with the parameter code specified in the Parameter Pointer field (Bytes 5 - 6) and return the number of bytes specified in the Allocation Length field (Bytes 7 - 8) in ascending order of parameter codes from the specified log page.</p> <p>Note that the current implementation of the READ/WRITE COMPRESSION page does not support a PPC other than 0.</p> <p>If PPC bit is set, then the target terminates the command with CHECK CONDITION status, sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST, and additional sense code set to INVALID FIELD IN CDB.</p>
SP	<p>Save Parameters. Not supported, must be set to 0. If for some reason the Save Parameters bit is set, the command terminates with a CHECK CONDITION status with a sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST and an ASC of INVALID FIELD IN CDB.</p>
PC	<p>Page Control. This field defines the type of parameter values to be returned:</p> <p><b><u>PC - Type of Parameter Values</u></b></p> <p>00b - Threshold Values</p> <p>01b - Cumulative Values</p> <p>10b - Default Threshold Values</p> <p>11b - Default Cumulative Values</p> <p>The Default Threshold Values are the maximum values that each parameter can attain.</p> <p>The Current Cumulative Values are the values computed since the last reset of the device (either via power-cycle, BUS DEVICE RESET, or SCSI RESET).</p> <p>The Default Cumulative Values are the values to which each parameter is initialized at a reset condition. Default values are zero.</p> <p>By default, Current Threshold Values = Default Threshold Values.</p> <p>Note that all types of parameter values are changeable via LOG SELECT.</p>

**LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)***Table 5–19 LOG SENSE Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions (continued)*

Field Name	Description																								
Page Code	<p>The Page Code field identifies which log page is being requested by the initiator. If the page is not supported, then the command terminates with a CHECK CONDITION status, sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST, and additional sense code of INVALID FIELD IN CDB. Supported pages are:</p> <table><tr><th>Page Code</th><th>Page Definition</th><th>See Section</th></tr><tr><td>00h</td><td>List of Supported Pages Page</td><td>5.8.2</td></tr><tr><td>02h</td><td>Write Error Counter Page</td><td>5.8.3</td></tr><tr><td>03h</td><td>Read Error Counter Page</td><td>5.8.3</td></tr><tr><td>07h</td><td>Last n Errors Events Page</td><td>5.8.4</td></tr><tr><td>32h</td><td>Compression Ratio Page</td><td>5.8.5</td></tr><tr><td>33h</td><td>Device Wellness Log Page</td><td>5.8.6</td></tr><tr><td>3Eh</td><td>Device Status Log Page</td><td>5.8.7</td></tr></table>	Page Code	Page Definition	See Section	00h	List of Supported Pages Page	5.8.2	02h	Write Error Counter Page	5.8.3	03h	Read Error Counter Page	5.8.3	07h	Last n Errors Events Page	5.8.4	32h	Compression Ratio Page	5.8.5	33h	Device Wellness Log Page	5.8.6	3Eh	Device Status Log Page	5.8.7
Page Code	Page Definition	See Section																							
00h	List of Supported Pages Page	5.8.2																							
02h	Write Error Counter Page	5.8.3																							
03h	Read Error Counter Page	5.8.3																							
07h	Last n Errors Events Page	5.8.4																							
32h	Compression Ratio Page	5.8.5																							
33h	Device Wellness Log Page	5.8.6																							
3Eh	Device Status Log Page	5.8.7																							
Parameter Pointer	<p>The Parameter Pointer field allows the host to specify at which parameter within a log page the requested data should begin. For example, if a page supports parameters 0 through 5, and the Parameter Pointer contains 3, then only parameters 3, 4, and 5 are returned to the initiator. Similarly, if a page supports parameters 1, 3, and 6, and the Parameter Pointer contains 2, then only parameters 3 and 6 are returned to the initiator.</p> <p>If the Parameter Pointer is larger than the highest numbered parameter on the page, then the target terminates the command with CHECK CONDITION status, sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST, and additional sense code set to INVALID FIELD IN CDB.</p> <p>Note that parameters within a page are always returned in ascending order according to parameter code.</p> <p>If the target does not support a parameter code within this page then it does not return any data associated with this parameter.</p>																								
Allocation Length	<p>The Allocation Length field is used to inform the target how much space the initiator has allocated for data. There must be sufficient space allocated for all the requested data, or the command terminates with a CHECK CONDITION status, sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST, and additional sense code set to INVALID FIELD IN CDB.</p>																								

## *LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)*

### **5.8.1 Error Detection Summary in LOG SENSE Command Descriptor Block**

The following conditions constitute errors detected by the drive relating to the LOG SENSE command descriptor block. The request sense data is set to ILLEGAL REQUEST, INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Error conditions occur when:

- A page is not supported
- The parameter pointer is larger than the highest numbered parameter on the page
- The SP bit is set to 1
- The Allocation Length is smaller than the data being returned by the target.
- PPC bit is set to 1

*LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)***5.8.2 Supported Pages Log Page (Page 00h)**

When page 00h is requested, the 4-byte page header is returned, followed by the pages supported in ascending order, one byte for each.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page Code (00h)					
1	Reserved							
2 - 3	(MSB) Page Length (07h) (LSB)							
4	00h							
5	02h							
6	03h							
7	07h							
8	32h							
9	33h							
10	3Eh							

*Figure 5-16 Supported Pages Page - Data Format*

*LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)***5.8.3 Read (Page 03h) / Write (Page 02h) Error LOG SENSE Page**

Each Log page begins with a 4-byte header followed by a number of log parameter blocks. Each block consists of 8 bytes except for parameter code 05h.

The log parameter block for the parameter total bytes processed (05h) is 12 bytes, since the parameter value is 8 bytes long.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page Code					
1	Reserved							
2 - 3	(MSB)  Page Length  (LSB)							

*Figure 5-17 Read / Write Error LOG SENSE Header Format*

*Table 5-20 Read / Write Error LOG SENSE Header Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Page Code	The Page Code echoes the page code that was specified in the LOG SENSE command descriptor block.
Page Length	<p>The Page Length field specifies the total number of bytes contained in this log page, not including the four bytes that make up the header.</p> <p>For example, if the PPC bit is 0 and the parameter pointer is 0, the target returns 4 bytes of page header with page length of 44h followed by 8 bytes of parameter value data for each parameter code except code 05h (for code 05h, it returns 12 bytes). Therefore, for parameter codes 00h, 01h, 02h, 03h, 04h, 06h, and 8000h, each page will be 8 bytes.</p>



*LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)*

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 - 1	(MSB) Parameter Code (LSB)							
2	DU	DS	TSD	ETC	TMC	Rsvd	LP	
3	Parameter Length							
4 - 11	(MSB) Parameter Value (LSB)							

**NOTE:** Byte 2 is also referred to the Parameter Control Byte.

*Figure 5–18 Log Parameters Format for Read / Write Error LOG SENSE Page*

*Table 5–21 Log Parameters for Read / Write Error LOG SENSE Page Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Parameter Code	<p>Parameter Codes supported for the READ/WRITE error counter pages are as follows:</p> <p><b><u>Parameter Code - Description</u></b></p> <p>00h - Errors corrected with substantial delays</p> <p>01h - Errors corrected with possible delays</p> <p>02h - Total rewrites or rereads</p> <p>03h - Total errors corrected</p> <p>04h - Total times correction algorithm processed</p> <p>05h - Total bytes processed</p> <p>06h - Total uncorrected errors</p>

*LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)**Table 5–21 Log Parameters for Read / Write Error LOG SENSE Page Field Descriptions  
(continued)*

Field Name	Description
Parameter Code (continued)	8000h - Vendor Unique  <b>Note:</b> Parameter codes 00h, 01h, and 04h always return a value of 0. Parameter value for 05h is 8 bytes; the parameter length is set to 8.
DU	Disable Update. This field with a value 0 indicates that the target will update all log parameter values. This field set to 1 indicates that the target will not update the log parameter values except in response to LOG SELECT. This bit is set by the drive when accumulated values reach maximum. This is also returned set to 1 if the host set the bit in the last LOG SELECT command. Default is 0.  Note that for parameter types other than threshold and cumulative values, this bit is always 0.
DS	Disable Save. Not supported; always set to 1.
TSD	Target Save Disable. Not supported; always set to 1.
ETC	Enable Threshold Comparison. When set to 1, indicates that comparison to threshold is performed. ETC of 0 indicates that the comparison is not performed. This bit is set to 1 by MODE SELECT. Default is 0.
TMC	Threshold Met Criteria. This field is valid only if host sets ETC to 1. It determines the basis for comparison and is specified by host using LOG SELECT. If the result of comparison is true (cumulative = threshold), and MODE SELECT / SENSE CONTROL MODE page RLEC bit is set to 1, then a UNIT ATTENTION is granted for all initiators. The sense key is set to UNIT ATTENTION, the additional sense code to LOG EXCEPTION, and ASCQ is set to THRESHOLD CONDITION MET. If the RLEC bit in CONTROL MODE page is 0, then UNIT ATTENTION is not generated.  Note that comparison is performed in real time. A Log Sense command need not be issued to get the CHECK CONDITION. Once ETC is selected, RLEC bit in control mode page, the CHECK CONDITION is issued based on the criteria defined in the TMC bits if the criteria are met in real time. CHECK CONDITION will not identify for which parameter code the criteria is met. Log Sense must be issued to read the counters to determine for which parameter code criteria has been met.

*LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)**Table 5–21 Log Parameters for Read / Write Error LOG SENSE Page Field Descriptions  
(continued)*

Field Name	Description
TMC (cont.)	<p>The criteria for comparison are:</p> <p><b><u>Code - Basis of Comparison</u></b></p> <p>00b - Every update of the cumulative value</p> <p>01b - Cumulative value equal to threshold value</p> <p>10b - Cumulative value not equal to threshold value</p> <p>11b - Cumulative value greater than threshold value</p>
LP	List Parameter. This bit is 0 since the parameter codes are treated as data counters.
Parameter Length	This field specifies the number of bytes of the parameter value.
Parameter Value	This field indicates the actual value of this log parameter.

**5.8.4 Last n Error Events Page (07h)**

This page returns one parameter at a time that contains the ASCII text for the specified event log. The Parameter Number field in the CDB specifies the log event to return. The log events in EEPROM are numbered from 0 to 255, after which the number wraps back to 0; only a limited number of events are stored at a given time (up to 14). The log event that is returned is the one whose Parameter Code is equal to, or the first one greater than, the Parameter Number specified in the command control block.

*LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)*

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page Code (07h)					
1	Reserved							
2 - 3	(MSB)  Page Length  (LSB)							

*Figure 5–19 Last n Error Events LOG SENSE Header Format**Table 5–22 Last n Error Events LOG SENSE Header Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Page Code	The Page Code echoes the page code that was specified in the LOG SENSE command descriptor block.
Page Length	The Page Length field specifies the total number of bytes contained in this log page, not including the four bytes that make up the header.

*LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)*

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 - 1	(MSB) Parameter Code (LSB)							
2	DU	DS	TSD	ETC	TMC	Rsvd	LP	
3	Parameter Length							
4 - n	(MSB) Hex ASCII String for Event n (LSB)							

*Figure 5–20 Log Parameters Format for Last n Error Events LOG SENSE Page**Table 5–23 Log Parameters for Last n Error Events LOG SENSE Page Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Parameter Code	Parameter Code values are assigned from 0 to 27 (decimal), where 0 is the oldest event stored and the highest Parameter Code returned is the most recent event.
Hex ASCII String for Event n	The text of the parameter includes a "Packet #" that is a value from 0 to 255. This internal number is assigned when the packet is written to EEPROM. A value of 0 is normally the oldest packet, but packet numbers can wrap around back to 0 after reaching 255. For a detailed description of the packet string, see Appendix D.

LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)

5.8.5 Read / Write Compression Page (32h)

This page begins with a 4-byte header followed by the log parameter blocks of 6 or 8 bytes, depending on the Parameter Code selected.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page Code (32h)					
1	Reserved							
2 - 3	(MSB) Additional Length (LSB)							

Figure 5–21 Read / Write Compression Ratio LOG SENSE Header Format

Table 5–24 Read / Write Compression Ratio LOG SENSE Header Field Descriptions

Field Name	Description
Page Code	The Page Code echoes the page code that was specified in the LOG SENSE command descriptor block.
Additional Length	The Additional Length field specifies the number of bytes available and depends on the parameters requested.

**LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)**

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 - 1	(MSB) Parameter Code (LSB)							
2	DU	DS	TSD	ETC	TMC	Rsvd	LP	
3	02h							
4 - n	(MSB) Compression Ratio x 100 (LSB)							

*Figure 5–22 Log Parameters Format for Read / Write Compression Ratio LOG SENSE Page (Parameter Codes 00h and 01h)*

*Table 5–25 Log Parameters for Read / Write Compression Ratio LOG SENSE Page Field Descriptions (Parameter Codes 00h and 01h)*

Field Name	Description
Parameter Code	Parameter Codes supported for the READ / WRITE COMPRESSION RATIO page are as follows (for codes 00h and 01h only; codes 02h through 09h are detailed separately):  <b><u>Parameter Code - Description</u></b>  00h - READ Compression Ratio x 100  01h - WRITE Compression Ration x 100
DU	Disable Update. Always 0.
DS	Disable Save. Not supported. This bit always set to 1.
TSD	Target Save Disable. Not supported. This bit always set to 1.
ETC	Enable Threshold Comparison. Threshold checking is not supported on this page. Always set to 0.
TMC	Threshold Met Criteria. Always 0.
LP	List Parameter. Always set to 0 (parameter codes treated as data counter).

LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 - 1	(MSB)  Parameter Code  (LSB)							
2	DU	DS	TSD	ETC	TMC	Rsvd	LP	
3	04h							
4 - 7	(MSB)  Counter Value  (LSB)							

Figure 5–23 Log Parameters Format for Read / Write Compression Ratio LOG SENSE Page (Parameter Codes 02h through 09h)

Table 5–26 Log Parameters for Read / Write Compression Ratio LOG SENSE Page Field Descriptions (Parameter Codes 02h through 09h)

Field Name	Description
Parameter Code	Parameter Codes supported for the READ / WRITE COMPRESSION RATIO page (codes 02h through 09h) are as follows:  <b><u>Parameter Code - Description</u></b>  02h - Mbytes Transferred to Host 03h - Bytes Transferred to Host 04h - Mbytes Read from Tape 05h - Bytes Read from Tape 06h - Mbytes Transferred from Host 07h - Bytes Transferred from Host 08h - Mbytes Written to Tape 09h - Bytes Written to Tape



*LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)**Table 5–26 Log Parameters for Read / Write Compression Ratio LOG SENSE Page Field Descriptions (Parameter Codes 02h through 09h) (continued)*

Field Name	Description
DU	Disable Update. Always 0.
DS	Disable Save. Not supported. This bit always set to 1.
TSD	Target Save Disable. Not supported. This bit always set to 1.
ETC	Enable Threshold Comparison. Threshold checking is not supported on this page. Always set to 0.
TMC	Threshold Met Criteria. Always 0.
LP	List Parameter. Always set to 0 (parameter codes treated as data counter).
Counter Value	<p>Parameter Codes 02h through 09h provide a count of the number of bytes transferred since the current tape cartridge was inserted or since the last time the counters were reset via a MODE SELECT command.</p> <p><u>Parameter Codes 02h and 03h</u> -- Report the count of bytes transferred from the tape drive to the initiator. Parameter Code 02h reports the number of full megabytes transferred; Parameter Code 03h reports the number of bytes less than a full megabyte that have been transferred. Multiplying the counter returned for Parameter Code 02h by 1,048,576 and then adding the value of the counter returned by Parameter Code 03h results in the actual total bytes transferred to the initiator.</p> <p><u>Parameter Codes 04h and 05h</u> -- Report the count of bytes transferred from the tape drive to the buffer. Parameter Code 04h reports the number of full megabytes transferred; Parameter Code 05h reports the number of bytes less than a full megabyte that have been transferred. Multiplying the counter returned for Parameter Code 04h by 1,048,576 and then adding the value of the counter returned by Parameter Code 05h results in the actual total bytes transferred from tape to the buffer.</p>

*LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)**Table 5–26 Log Parameters for Read / Write Compression Ratio LOG SENSE Page Field Descriptions (Parameter Codes 02h through 09h) (continued)*

Field Name	Description
Counter Value (cont.)	<p><u>Parameter Codes 06h and 07h</u> -- Report the count of bytes transferred from the initiator to the buffer. Parameter Code 06h reports the number of full megabytes transferred; Parameter Code 07h reports the number of bytes less than a full megabyte that have been transferred. Multiplying the counter returned for Parameter Code 06h by 1,048,576 and then adding the value of the counter returned by Parameter Code 07h results in the actual total bytes transferred from the initiator to the buffer.</p> <p><u>Parameter Codes 08h and 09h</u> -- Report the count of bytes written to the tape drive. Parameter Code 08h reports the number of full megabytes transferred; Parameter Code 09h reports the number of bytes less than a full megabyte that have been transferred. Multiplying the counter returned for Parameter Code 08h by 1,048,576 and then adding the value of the counter returned by Parameter Code 09h results in the actual total bytes written to the tape drive.</p>

*LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)***5.8.6 Device Wellness Page (33h)**

The Device Wellness Page returns information about any check conditions related to Sense Keys 1, 3, 4, and 9 logged by the tape drive. Up to 16 entries (parameter code 0000h to 000Fh) can be contained in the page; each entry records a check condition (Sense Key = 1), a medium error (Sense Key = 3), or hardware error (Sense Key = 4). Note that parameter code 000h contains the oldest log information while parameter 000Fh contains the most recent.

Only head cleaning recovered errors (more serious recovered errors) are recorded when Sense Key is 1; all sense data are recorded when Sense Key is 3 or 4.

This page begins with a 4-byte header followed by the log parameter blocks.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page Code (33h)					
1	Reserved							
2 - 3	(MSB)  Page Length   							

*Figure 5-24 Device Wellness LOG SENSE Header Format*

*Table 5-27 Device Wellness LOG SENSE Header Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Page Code	The Page Code echoes the page code that was specified in the LOG SENSE command descriptor block.
Page Length	The Page Length field specifies the number of bytes available and depends on the parameters requested.

*LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)*

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Parameter Code							
1	Reserved							
2	DU	DS	TSD	ETC	TMC		Rsvd	LP
3 - 7	(MSB) <div>Time Stamp</div> (LSB)							
8 - 11	(MSB) <div>Media ID</div> (LSB)							
12	Sense Key							
13	Additional Sense Key							
15	Additional Error Information							

*Figure 5–25 Log Parameters Format for Device Wellness LOG SENSE Page (Parameters 0000h – 000Fh)*

*LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)**Table 5–28 Log Parameters for Device Wellness LOG SENSE Page Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Parameter Code	Parameter Codes 0000h through 000Fh are supported. This provides 16 log entries for error information capture.
DU	Disable Update. Always 0.
DS	Disable Save. Not supported. This bit always set to 1.
TSD	Target Save Disable. Not supported. This bit always set to 0.
ETC	Enable Threshold Comparison. Threshold checking is not supported on this page. Always set to 0.
TMC	Threshold Met Criteria. Always 0.
LP	List Parameter. Always set to 0.
Time Stamp	Power-on hours when CHECK CONDITION occurred (note that this is the number of power-on hours of the total number of hours during the lifetime of the drive).
Media ID	Internal media identifier being used when CHECK CONDITION occurred. 0 = no media or unknown media when event occurred. Note that this is not an applicable means of tracing media.

*LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)***5.8.7 Device Status Page (3Eh)**

The Device Status Page describes the current status of the tape drive. Three parameters are defined in this page; each is four bytes in length.

Parameter Code	Description
0000h	Device Type (for sequential devices such as tape drives, this value is always 00010000h)
0001h	Device Cleaning-Related Status
0002h	Number of "loads" over the life of the tape drive.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page Code (3Eh)					
1	Reserved							
2 - 3	(MSB) Page Length (LSB)							

*Figure 5-26 Device Status LOG SENSE Header Format*

*Table 5-29 Device Status LOG SENSE Header Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Page Code	The Page Code echoes the page code that was specified in the LOG SENSE command descriptor block.
Page Length	The Page Length field specifies the number of bytes available and depends on the parameters requested.

*LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)*

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 - 1	Parameter Code							
2	DU	DS	TSD	ETC	TMC	Rsvd	LP	
3	Parameter Length (04h)							
4 - 7	(MSB) Parameter Value (LSB)							

Figure 5-27 Log Parameters Format for Device Status LOG SENSE Page (Parameters 0000h, 0001h, or 0002h)

Table 5-30 Log Parameters for Device Status LOG SENSE Page Field Descriptions

Field Name	Description
Parameter Code	Parameter Codes 0000h through 0002h are supported.  <b>Code - Description</b>  0000h - Specifies device type. For sequential-type devices such as tape drives, the value is always 00010000h.  0001h - Specifies device cleaning-related status. See Figure 5-28.  0002h - Specifies the number of "loads" over the lifetime of the tape drive.
DU	Disable Update. Always 0.
DS	Disable Save. Not supported. This bit always set to 1.
TSD	Target Save Disable. When = 0, indicates that the target provides a target-defined method for saving log parameters. When = 1, indicates that either the target does not provide a defined method for saving log parameters or that the target-defined method has been disabled by the initiator.

**LOG SENSE Command (4Dh) (continued)***Table 5–30 Log Parameters for Device Status LOG SENSE Page Field Descriptions  
(continued)*

Field Name	Description
ETC	Enable Threshold Comparison. Threshold checking is not supported on this page. Always set to 0.
TMC	Threshold Met Criteria. Always 0.
LP	List Parameter. Always set to 0 (parameter codes treated as data counter).

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved					ClnR	ClnQ	ClnEx
1 - 3	(MSB) Reserved (LSB)							

*Figure 5–28 Log Parameters Format for Device Status LOG SENSE Page Parameter  
0001h (Cleaning Related)**Table 5–31 Log Parameters for Device Status LOG SENSE Parameter 0001h (Cleaning  
Related) Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
ClnR	Set to 1 if a cleaning required condition exists.
ClnQ	Set to 1 if a cleaning request condition exists.
ClnEx	Set to 1 if the cleaning tape has expired.



## 5.9 MODE SELECT (6) / (10) COMMAND (15H / 55H)

The MODE SELECT command (available in either 6- or 10-byte format) enables the host to configure the tape drive. Implementing MODE SELECT and MODE SENSE requires “handshaking” between the host and the drive. Before configuring the drive, the host should issue a MODE SENSE command to the drive to obtain a report of the current configuration and determine what parameters are configurable. The host interprets this information and then may issue MODE SELECT to set the drive to the host’s preferred configuration. The Mode Parameter List described in Section 5.8 is passed from the initiator to the drive during the command’s DATA OUT phase.

Information for the drive is carried on a number of pages, each of which serves to set the tape drive’s operating parameters. The MODE SELECT pages supported, and the section of this manual that details each page, are:

Page Code	Description	Section
01h	READ/WRITE Error Recovery Page	5.9.2
02h	Disconnect / Reconnect Page	5.9.3
0Ah	Control Mode Page	5.9.4
0Fh	Data Compression Page	5.9.5
10h	Device Configuration Page	5.9.6
11h	Medium Partition Page	5.9.7
3Eh	EEPROM Vendor Unique Page	5.9.8

The tape drive always powers up with its default configurations set. This is also true if the drive receives a BUS DEVICE RESET message or a hard reset via the RST line on the SCSI bus.

The Command Descriptor Block is illustrated in Figure 5-29.

### NOTE

For a list of changeable parameters within MODE SELECT, refer to Sections 5.9.8 (EEPROM Vendor Unique Page 3Eh) and 5.9.9 (Changeable Parameters within MODE SELECT).

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)***Mode Select (6) Command Descriptor Block – Data Format**

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (15h)							
1	Logical Unit Number			PF	Reserved			SP (0)
2 - 3	Reserved							
4	Parameter List Length							
5	Unused (00)		Reserved				Flag	Link

**Mode Select (10) Command Descriptor Block – Data Format**

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (55h)							
1	Logical Unit Number			PF	Reserved			SP (0)
2 - 6	Reserved							
7 - 8	Parameter List Length							
9	Unused (00)		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5–29 MODE SELECT (6) and (10) Command Descriptor Blocks - Data Format*

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)**Table 5–32 MODE SELECT (6) /(10) Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
PF	Page Format. The Page Format bit indicates that the data sent by the host after the MODE SELECT header and block descriptors complies with the definition of pages in the SCSI-2 specification. The SCSI-1 format will not be implemented so this bit must be set to 1. It is an ILLEGAL REQUEST to have page parameters while the PF bit is 0.
SP	Save Parameters. Must be 0. If set, this bit instructs the drive to save all savable pages, and this is not supported on the tape drive.

**5.9.1 Mode Parameter List**

The following figure shows the format of the Mode Parameter List that is passed by the initiator to the tape drive during the command's DATA OUT phase.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 - 3	Mode Parameter Header							
4 - 11	Mode Parameter Block Descriptor (Optional)							
4 - 11 or 12 - n	Page(s) (Optional)							

*Figure 5–30 MODE SELECT Mode Parameter List - Data Format*

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)**Table 5–33 MODE SELECT Mode Parameter List - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Mode Parameter Header	4 bytes in length, contains information about the remainder of the Parameter List and is always present (Figure 5-31 and Table 5-34).
Mode Parameter Block Descriptor	8 bytes in length, allows the initiator to set the drive's Logical Block Size and number of Descriptor Logical Block Addresses (Figure 5-32 and Table 5-35).
Page(s)	The Page Code(s) of the pages that are a part of this MODE SELECT command.

**5.9.1.1 Mode Parameter Header**

The figure and table that follow provide an illustration and description of the fields that make up the MODE SELECT command's Mode Parameter header.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved							
1	Media Type							
2	Ignored	Buffered Mode			Speed			
3	Block Descriptor Length (08h)							

*Figure 5–31 MODE SELECT Mode Parameter Header - Data Format*

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)**Table 5–34 MODE SELECT Mode Parameter Header - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Media Type	This field is ignored by the MODE SELECT command.
Buffered Mode	<p>Default = 1. The drive implements immediate reporting on WRITE commands through its buffered mode. With Buffered Mode set to 1, the drive reports GOOD status on WRITE commands as soon as the data block has been transferred to the buffer. If this field = 0, then the drive does not report GOOD status on WRITE commands until the data blocks have been written to tape.</p> <p>When Buffered Mode is not used, the tape drive suffers significant performance degradation, and possible capacity, depending on tape format, block size, and compression. When writing 2.6 or 6.0 GB formats and block size that is a multiple of 4 Kbytes, there is no capacity loss. Likewise, when using the 10 or 20 GB format with compression disabled and block size a multiple of 8 Kbytes, there is no capacity loss.</p> <p>When writing 10 or 20 GB format with compression enabled and Buffered Mode disabled, some capacity loss can occur. The block packing feature is essentially disabled by turning off Buffered Mode.</p> <p>If Buffered Mode is set to a number greater than 1, the command is rejected with CHECK CONDITION, sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST.</p>
Speed	The tape drive supports only its default speed.
Block Descriptor Length	<p>This field specifies the length in bytes of all the block descriptors. Since the drive only allows one block description, the value must be either 0 or 8. A value of 0 indicates no block description is included; a value of 8 indicates a block descriptor is present and precedes the mode page data. Any other value other than 0 or 8 causes a CHECK CONDITION status with sense key of ILLEGAL REQUEST to be returned.</p>

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)*

**5.9.1.2 Mode Parameter Block Descriptor**

The figure and table that follow provide an illustration and description of the fields that make up the MODE SELECT command's Mode Parameter Block Descriptor.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Density Code							
1 - 3	(MSB) Number of Blocks (LSB)							
4	Reserved							
5 - 7	(MSB) Block Length (LSB)							

*Figure 5–32 MODE SELECT Mode Parameter Block Descriptor - Data Format*

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)**Table 5–35 MODE SELECT Mode Parameter Block Descriptor - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description																								
Density Code	This field should match the current tape medium density; it is set to 0 if the density is unknown.																								
	<table> <tr> <th>Density Code</th><th>Description</th></tr> <tr> <td>00h</td><td>Use default density.</td></tr> <tr> <td>0Ah</td><td>6667 bpi MFM serial cartridge tape X3B5/86-199 (read only).</td></tr> <tr> <td>16h</td><td>10000 bpi MFM serial cartridge tape X3.193-1990 (read only).</td></tr> <tr> <td>17h</td><td>42500 bpi MFM serial cartridge tape X3B5/91- 2.6 GB (DLTtape III only).</td></tr> <tr> <td>18h</td><td>Same as 17h, but with 56 track pairs vs. 24 - 6.0 GB (DLTtape III only).</td></tr> <tr> <td>19h</td><td>62500 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 10.0 GB (DLTtape III only) /15.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt only)</td></tr> <tr> <td>1Ah</td><td>81633 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 20.0 GB (DLTtape IV only)</td></tr> </table> <p>The density codes above are the <b>preferred</b> codes used to define density. Additionally, the following codes may be used, though use of the Data Compression Page is preferred:</p> <table> <tr> <td>80h</td><td>62500 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 10.0 GB (DLTtape III) /15.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt) without compression</td></tr> <tr> <td>81h</td><td>62500 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 20.0 GB (DLTtape III) /30.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt) with compression</td></tr> <tr> <td>82h</td><td>81633 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 20.0 GB (DLTtape IV) without compression</td></tr> <tr> <td>83h</td><td>81633 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 40 GB (DLTtape IV) with compression</td></tr> </table>	Density Code	Description	00h	Use default density.	0Ah	6667 bpi MFM serial cartridge tape X3B5/86-199 (read only).	16h	10000 bpi MFM serial cartridge tape X3.193-1990 (read only).	17h	42500 bpi MFM serial cartridge tape X3B5/91- 2.6 GB (DLTtape III only).	18h	Same as 17h, but with 56 track pairs vs. 24 - 6.0 GB (DLTtape III only).	19h	62500 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 10.0 GB (DLTtape III only) /15.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt only)	1Ah	81633 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 20.0 GB (DLTtape IV only)	80h	62500 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 10.0 GB (DLTtape III) /15.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt) without compression	81h	62500 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 20.0 GB (DLTtape III) /30.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt) with compression	82h	81633 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 20.0 GB (DLTtape IV) without compression	83h	81633 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 40 GB (DLTtape IV) with compression
Density Code	Description																								
00h	Use default density.																								
0Ah	6667 bpi MFM serial cartridge tape X3B5/86-199 (read only).																								
16h	10000 bpi MFM serial cartridge tape X3.193-1990 (read only).																								
17h	42500 bpi MFM serial cartridge tape X3B5/91- 2.6 GB (DLTtape III only).																								
18h	Same as 17h, but with 56 track pairs vs. 24 - 6.0 GB (DLTtape III only).																								
19h	62500 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 10.0 GB (DLTtape III only) /15.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt only)																								
1Ah	81633 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 20.0 GB (DLTtape IV only)																								
80h	62500 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 10.0 GB (DLTtape III) /15.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt) without compression																								
81h	62500 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 20.0 GB (DLTtape III) /30.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt) with compression																								
82h	81633 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 20.0 GB (DLTtape IV) without compression																								
83h	81633 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 40 GB (DLTtape IV) with compression																								
Number of Blocks	This MODE SENSE field is sent = 0, indicating that all of the remaining logical blocks on the tape will have the medium characteristics specified by the block descriptor.																								

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)**Table 5–35 MODE SELECT Mode Parameter Block Descriptor - Field Descriptions  
(continued)*

Field Name	Description
Block Length	This field specifies the length, in bytes, of each logical block transferred over the SCSI bus. A block length of 0 indicates that the length is variable (specified in the I/O command). Any value other than 0 indicates the number of bytes per block to use for READ, WRITE, and VERIFY commands that specify a “fixed” bit of 1 (i.e., fixed block mode) which also causes the transfer length in the command descriptor block to be defined as a block count. If fixed bit is not equal to 1, this field is ignored.

**5.9.1.3 Mode Page Descriptors**

Following the MODE SELECT command’s Mode Parameter Block Descriptor are the MODE SELECT pages, each of which sets a different device parameter. Each mode page has a 2-byte header that identifies the page code and indicates the number of bytes in that page.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS (0)	0	Page Code					
1	Additional Page Length							
2 - n	Page-Defined or Vendor Unique Parameter List							

*Figure 5–33 MODE SELECT Page Descriptor - Data Format*



*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)**Table 5–36 MODE SELECT Page Descriptor - Field Descriptions*

<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
PS	Parameters Savable. For the MODE SELECT (6) (10) commands, this field is reserved (0).
Additional Page Length	Indicates number of bytes in that page (not including bytes 0 and 1).
Page-Defined or Vendor Unique Parameter List	Information in this field depends on the mode page. Refer to Sections 5.9.2 through 5.9.9.

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)***5.9.2 READ / WRITE Error Recovery Page (01h)**

The READ / WRITE Error Recovery Page controls the drive's response to error conditions that arise during the course of READ and WRITE command processing.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS (0)	0	Page Code (01h)					
1	Additional Page Length (0Ah)							
2	Rsvd	Rsvd	TB	Rsvd	EER (1)	PER	DTE (0)	DCR (0)
3	Read Retry Count							
4 – 7	Reserved							
8	Write Retry Count							
9 – 11	Reserved							

*Figure 5–34 Error Recovery Page - Data Format*

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)**Table 5-37 Error Recovery Page - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
PS	Parameters Savable. For MODE SELECT, this bit must be 0.
Additional Page Length	<p>This field indicates the number bytes in the page. However, the value does not include bytes 0 and 1. The length is returned in MODE SENSE commands and must subsequently be set to the same value when performing MODE SELECT. If the page length does not match that expected by the drive, a CHECK CONDITION status is returned, sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST.</p> <p>The drive returns a CHECK CONDITION status with sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST if it receives an unsupported Page Code or a Page field with values not supported or changeable. In such cases, no parameters are changed as a result of the command.</p>
TB	Transfer Block. Not supported.
EER	Enable Early Recovery. Set to 1 (always enabled).
PER	Post Error. Default is 0. If set to 1, this bit enables reporting of CHECK CONDITION to report recovered READ / WRITE errors.
DTE	Disable Transfer on Error. Must be 0. Not supported.
DCR	Disable ECC Correction. Must be 0. Not supported.
Read Retry Count	This field reports the maximum number or rereads that are attempted before declaring an unrecoverable error.
Write Retry Count	This field reports the maximum number of overwrite retries that will be attempted before declaring an unrecoverable error.

**5.9.3 Disconnect / Reconnect Page (02h)**

The Disconnect / Reconnect Page controls the drive's behavior on the SCSI bus and allows an initiator to tune bus performance.

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)*

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS (0)	0	Page Code (02h)					
1	Additional Page Length (0Eh)							
2	Buffer Full Ratio							
3	Buffer Empty Ratio							
4 - 5	(MSB)	Bus Inactivity Limit						(LSB)
6 - 7	(MSB)	Disconnect Time Limit						(LSB)
8 - 9	(MSB)	Connect Time Limit						(LSB)
10 - 11	(MSB)	Maximum Burst Time						(LSB)
12	Reserved						DTDC	
13 - 15	Reserved							

*Figure 5–35 Disconnect / Reconnect Page - Data Format*

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)**Table 5-38 Disconnect / Reconnect Page - Field Descriptions*

<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
PS	Parameters Savable. For MODE SELECT, this bit must be 0.
Additional Page Length	<p>This field indicates the number bytes in the page. However, the value does not include bytes 0 and 1. The length is returned in MODE SENSE commands and must subsequently be set to the same value when performing MODE SELECT. If the page length does not match that expected by the drive, a CHECK CONDITION status is returned, sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST.</p> <p>The drive returns a CHECK CONDITION status with sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST if it receives an unsupported Page Code or a Page field with values not supported or changeable. In such cases, no parameters are changed as a result of the command.</p>
Buffer Full Ratio	Not supported. Any value is ignored.
Buffer Empty Ratio	Not supported. Any value is ignored.
Bus Inactivity Limit	Not supported. Any value is ignored.
Disconnect Time Limit	Not supported. Any value is ignored.
Connect Time Limit	Not supported. Any value is ignored.
Maximum Burst Size	This value specifies the maximum amount of data that will be transferred without disconnecting. A value of 0 sets no limit. Any value is in units of 512 bytes. For example, a value of 8 represents 4 Kbytes. Values that are not multiples of 8 are rounded up to the closest multiple of 8.

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)**Table 5–38 Disconnect / Reconnect Page - Field Descriptions (continued)*

Field Name	Description
DTDC	Data Transfer Disconnect Control. This field defines further restrictions for when disconnect is permitted.  <b>DTDC    Description</b>  00b    Data transfer disconnect control is not used. Disconnect is controlled by the other fields in this page.  01b    Once the data transfer of a command has been started, a target does not attempt to disconnect until all the data to be transferred has been transferred.  10b    Reserved.  11b    Once the data transfer of a command has started, a target does not attempt to disconnect until the command is complete.  If DTDC is a non-zero value and the maximum burst size is non-zero, the tape drive returns CHECK CONDITION status, sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST and additional sense code set to ILLEGAL FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

---

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)***5.9.4 Control Mode Page (0Ah)**

The Control Mode page provides control over several features such as tagged queuing, extended contingent allegiance, asynchronous event notification, and error logging.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS (0)	Rsvd	Page Code (0Ah)					
1	Page Length (06)							
2	Reserved							RLEC
3	Queue Algorithm Modifier (0)				Reserved		Qerr (0)	DQue (0)
4	EECA (0)	Reserved				RAENP (0)	UAAENP (0)	EAENP
5	Reserved							
6 - 7	(MSB)  Ready AEN Holdoff Period (0)   							

*Figure 5–36 Control Mode Page Format Descriptor - Data Format*

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)**Table 5–39 Control Mode Page Descriptor - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
PS	Parameters Savable. For MODE SELECT, this bit must be 0.
Page Length	The Page Length field indicates the number of bytes in the Control Mode Page that follow this byte. The valid value for this byte is 06h.
RLEC	<p>Report Log Exception Condition. When set to 1, specifies that the target will report log exception conditions. When 0, specifies that the target will not report log exception conditions.</p> <p>The RLEC bit works in conjunction with the READ / WRITE Error Log Sense Page, specifically, the TMC bit of the READ / WRITE Error Log SENSE Page (Page 2 and 3), described earlier in this manual.</p> <p>The RLEC bit indicates whether the drive should return CHECK CONDITION status with sense key set to UNIT ATTENTION when one of the READ and WRITE error counters of the log pages reach a specified threshold. Thresholds can be modified using LOG SELECT.</p>
Queue Algorithm Modifier	Must be 0.
Qerr	Queue Error. Must be 0.
DQue	Disable Queuing. Must be 0.
EECA	Enable Extended Contingent Allegiance. Not supported; must be 0.
RAENP	Ready Asynchronous Event Notification. Not supported; must be 0.
UAAENP	Unit Attention Asynchronous Event Notification. Not supported; must be 0.
EAENP	Enable AEN Permission. Asynchronous event notification is not supported; must be 0.
Ready AEN Holdoff Period	Not supported; must be 0.



*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)***5.9.5 Data Compression Page (0Fh)**

The Data Compression page specifies parameters for the control of data compression. This page allows the user to turn the tape drive's compressed format on and off independently of the tape medium's position. Additionally, it allows the user to enable or disable decompression of the tape drive compressed data during WRITE operations.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page Code (0Fh)					
1	Page Length (0Eh)							
2	DCE	DCC (1)	Reserved					
3	DDE (1)	RED (00)		Reserved				
4 - 7	(MSB) Compression Algorithm (10)   (LSB)							
8 - 11	(MSB) Decompression Algorithm (10)   (LSB)							
12 - 15	Reserved							

*Figure 5-37 Data Compression Page Format Descriptor - Data Format*

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)**Table 5-40 Data Compression Page Descriptor - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Page Code	The Page Code identifies the type of MODE SELECT page being transferred. A value of 0Fh identifies this as the Data Compression page.
Page Length	The Page Length field indicates the number of bytes in the Data Compression page that follow this byte. The valid value for this byte is 0Eh.
DCE	Data Compression Enable. This bit specifies whether the tape drive should enable or disable data compression. When set to 1, the drive starts in compressed format.
DCC	Data Compression Capable. This bit is used by the MODE SENSE command to indicate that the tape drive supports data compression.
DDE	Data Decompression Enable. Must be set to 1. When the tape drive reads compressed data from tape, it automatically decompresses the data before sending it to the initiator. Data compression must always be enabled.
RED	Report Exception on Decompression. The tape drive does not report exceptions on decompression (boundaries between compressed and uncompressed data). The RED field must be 00h.
Compression Algorithm	<p>The Compression Algorithm field indicates which compression algorithm the tape drive will use to process data from the initiator when the DCE bit (byte 02, bit 7) is set to 1. The only value currently supported for this field is 10h.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Specifying a value other than 10h for this field causes the tape drive to return CHECK CONDITION status, sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST. However, if EEPROM parameter EnaRepDecomp is set, the parameter in this field is ignored and no CHECK CONDITION status is returned.</p>
Decompression Algorithm	<p>The Decompression Algorithm field indicates which decompression algorithm the tape drive will use when decompressing data on the tape. The only value currently supported is 10h.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Specifying a value other than 10h for this field causes the tape drive to return CHECK CONDITION status, sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST.</p>

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)***5.9.6 Device Configuration Page (10h)**

The Device Configuration Page controls the drive's behavior on the SCSI bus and allows an initiator to tune bus performance.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS (0)	0	Page Code (10h)					
1	Additional Page Length (0Eh)							
2	Res'd	CAP (0)	CAF (0)	Active Format (0)				
3	Active Partition (0)							
4	Write Buffer Full Ratio							
5	Read Buffer Empty Ratio							
6 - 7	(MSB) Write Delay Time (LSB)							
8	DBR (0)	BIS	RSmk (0)	AVC (0)	SOCF (0)		RBO (0)	REW (0)
9	Gap Size (0)							
10	EOD Defined (0)			EEG	SEW (1)	Reserved		
11 - 13	(MSB) Buffer Size at Early Warning (0) (LSB)							
14	Select Data Compression Algorithm							
15	Reserved							

*Figure 5–38 Device Configuration Page - Data Format*

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)**Table 5-41 Device Configuration Page - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
PS	Parameters Savable. For MODE SELECT, this bit must be 0.
Additional Page Length	<p>This field indicates the number bytes in the page. However, the value does not include bytes 0 and 1. The length is returned in MODE SENSE commands and must subsequently be set to the same value when performing MODE SELECT. If the page length does not match that expected by the drive, a CHECK CONDITION status is returned, sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST.</p> <p>The drive returns a CHECK CONDITION status with sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST if it receives an unsupported Page Code or a Page field with values not supported or changeable. In such cases, no parameters are changed as a result of the command.</p>
CAP	Change Active Partition. Not supported; must be 0.
CAF	Change Active Format. Not supported; must be 0.
Active Format	Not supported. Must be 0.
Active Partition	Only partition 0 is supported. Setting this field to any other value causes rejection by the drive with a CHECK CONDITION status, sense key ILLEGAL REQUEST set.
Write Buffer Full Ratio	The drive sets this field to 0. The drive uses an automatic adaptive mechanism to adjust its Full Ratio according to the average data rates over the SCSI bus.
Read Buffer Empty Ratio	The drive sets this field to 0. The drive uses an automatic adaptive mechanism to adjust its Empty Ratio according to the average data rates over the SCSI bus.
Write Delay Time	This field indicates the maximum time that the drive will wait with a partially full buffer before forcing the data to tape (100 ms increments). The buffer Full/Empty ratio, which is dynamic, can cause data to be written sooner than the Write Delay Time would indicate. The Write Delay Time defaults to 200 (C8h). This causes the buffer to be flushed in 20 seconds. Maximum value is 6500 (1964h) and the minimum is 15 (0Fh). This represents a range from 11 minutes down to 1.5 seconds.

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)**Table 5-41 Device Configuration Page - Field Descriptions (continued)*

Field Name	Description
Write Delay Time (cont.)	Values between 0 and 15 on a MODE SELECT are rounded down to 0. This causes the data to go straight to the medium without delay.
DBR	Data Buffer Recovery. Not supported, must be 0.
BIS	Block Identifiers Supported. This field is supported. Set to 1.
RSmk	Report Setmark. Not supported, must be 0.
AVC	Automatic Velocity Control. Not supported; must be 0.
SOCF	Stop on Consecutive Filemarks. Not supported; must be 0.
RBO	Recover Buffer Order. Not supported; must be 0.
REW	Report Early Warning. Not supported; must be 0 (do not report Early Warning EOM on READ).
Gap Size	Not used; must be 0.
EOD Defined	End-of-Data Defined. This field must be set to 00h.
EEG	Enable End-of-Data Generation. Set to 1. This field indicates that the drive will generate an EOD. The drive generates an EOD mark before any change of direction following a WRITE-type operation. This bit is ignored, however, on MODE SELECT.
SEW	Synchronize at Early Warning. Must be set to 1.
Buffer Size at Early Warning	Not supported; must be 0.
SEW	Synchronize at Early Warning. Must be set to 1.
Select Data Compression Algorithm	When set to 1, enables data compression. When 0, disables data compression.  The setting on the front panel of the tape drive overrides any setting of MODE SELECT, but no error will result. If the setting is returned to the automatic mode on the front panel of the tape drive, the value from the last MODE SELECT command determines whether compression is enabled or disabled.

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)***5.9.7 Medium Partition Page (11h)**

The drive supports the Medium Partitions Parameters Page that is used to specify the medium partitions.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS (0)	0	Page Code (11h)					
1	Additional Page Length (06)							
2	Maximum Additional Partitions (0)							
3	Additional Partitions Defined (0)							
4	FDP (0)	SDP (0)	IDP (0)	PSUM (0)		Reserved		
5	Medium Format Recognition (01)							
6 - 7	Reserved							

*Figure 5–39 Medium Partition Page Format Descriptor - Data Format*

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)**Table 5-42 Medium Partition Page Descriptor - Field Descriptions*

<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
PS	Parameters Savable. For MODE SELECT, this bit must be 0.
Additional Page Length	<p>This field indicates the number bytes in the page. However, the value does not include bytes 0 and 1. The length is returned in MODE SENSE commands and must subsequently be set to the same value when performing MODE SELECT. If the page length does not match that expected by the drive, a CHECK CONDITION status is returned, sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST.</p> <p>The drive returns a CHECK CONDITION status with sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST if it receives an unsupported Page Code or a Page field with values not supported or changeable. In such cases, no parameters are changed as a result of the command.</p>
Maximum Additional Partitions	Not supported. Must be 0.
Additional Partitions Defined	Must be 0. This field specifies the number of additional partitions to be defined for the tape based on the settings of the SDP and IDP bits. The maximum allowed is the value returned in the Maximum Additional Partitions field. Only one partition is supported, therefore the value of the field must be 0.
FDP	Fixed Data Partitions. Must be 0.
SDP	Select Data Partitions. Must be 0.
IDP	Initiator Defined Partitions. Must be 0.
PSUM	Partition Size Unit of Measure. Must be 0.
Medium Format Recognition	This field is valid for MODE SENSE only, and is set to 01h, indicating that Medium Format Recognition is supported.

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)***5.9.8 EEPROM Vendor Unique Page (3Eh)**

The drive supports a vendor unique page that enables a user to modify savable parameters. Only one savable parameter may be changed per Mode Select command.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS	Rsvd	Page Code (3Eh)					
1	Additional Page Length							
2	ASCII String of Parameter Name and Value							

*Figure 5–40 EEPROM Vendor Unique Page - Data Format*

The ASCII string has a parameter name, followed by one or more space characters, a parameter value, and an ASCII line feed or null character. When the string is parsed, the parameter value is interpreted as shown in the following table. Note that the parameter name may be in upper or lower case. The savable parameters are saved over resets and power cycles.

*Table 5–43 EEPROM Vendor Unique Page Parameters*

Name	Value Rep.	Default	Length (Bytes)	Usage
VENDORID	ASCII	QUANTUM	8	Vendor Identification field in INQUIRY Data
PRODUCTID	ASCII	DLT4000	16	Product Identification field in INQUIRY Data



*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)**Table 5-43 EEPROM Vendor Unique Page Parameters (continued)*

<b>Name</b>	<b>Value Rep.</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Length (Bytes)</b>	<b>Usage</b>
CACHETMS	ASCII Decimal	0	1	0,1 = Do not cache filemarks unless IMMED bit is set, if set  2 = Cache if not two in a row unless IMMED bit is 1.  3 = Always cache filemarks.
DEFAULTCOMPON	ASCII Binary	1	1	0 = Compression defaulted OFF at power-up/reset  1 = Compression defaulted ON at power-up/reset
DEFIXEDBLKEN	ASCII Decimal	0	8	Default fixed block size
DEFSEW	ASCII Binary	1	1	To set default SEW parameter.
DISLDRAUTODMC	ASCII Binary	1	1	To partially disable sequential loading with loader if any media loader command has been received.
DISUNBUFMODE	ASCII Binary	0	1	The drive disables unbuffered mode, i.e., it ignores the MODE SELECT "buffered mode" selection to turn off buffered mode, if set.
ENACLNGLTRPT	ASCII Binary	1	1	To report error status if cleaning indicator is on.
ENAINITSYNCEG	ASCII Binary	0	1	To enable target-initiated synchronous negotiation, if set.
ENALDRAUTOLD	ASCII Binary	1	1	To turn on/off sequential loading with loader
ENAMODEPG22	ASCII Binary	0	1	To enable vendor unique Data Compression (Status Mode Page)

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)**Table 5-43 EEPROM Vendor Unique Page Parameters (continued)*

<b>Name</b>	<b>Value Rep.</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Length (Bytes)</b>	<b>Usage</b>
ENAPARERRRETRY	ASCII Binary	0	1	To turn on/off parity error retry feature
ENAREPDECOMP	ASCII Binary	0	1	If set and the drive is in READ mode, the decompression algorithm field in Data Compression mode will be reset if the last block requested by the host was decompressed, otherwise it is cleared.
ENATHIRDPTYDENS	ASCII Binary	1	1	To make non-DLT density code act as the default density (same as density code 0), if set.
ENBINQMEDCHGR	ASCII Binary	0	1	0 = Disable media changer bit.  1 = Enable media changer bit in byte 6 of INQUIRY data (set if drive is in a media changer device)
FORCECOMP	ASCII Binary	0	1	0 = automatic <sup>2</sup>  1 = Always compress unless front panel selection disables it
FORCEDENSITY <sup>1</sup>	ASCII Decimal	0	1	0 = automatic <sup>2</sup> 1 = DLT260 2 = DLT600 3 = DLT2000 4 = DLT4000
<sup>1</sup> Applied to DLTtape III format tape for DLT260 tape drive, DLT600 tape drive and DLT2000xt tape drive. Applied to DLTtape IV format tape for DLT 4000 tape drive.				
<sup>2</sup> Parameter is not forced to a special format. Instead it is determined by the parameters selected via MODE SELECT.				

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)**Table 5-43 EEPROM Vendor Unique Page Parameters (continued)*

<b>Name</b>	<b>Value Rep.</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Length (Bytes)</b>	<b>Usage</b>
FORCEEREBUILD	ASCII Binary	0	1	To force all the EEPROM parameters to reset to default, if set.
FORCEREADSILI	ASCII Binary	0	1	To make variable READ command handled as if the SILL bit is set if set.
LDRCYCLRESET	ASCII Binary	0	1	To cause the first cartridge to be loaded if unloading the last cartridge when the loader product is operated in sequential mode, if set.
LOADERLUN	ASCII Decimal	1	1	1 - 7 = LUN to report media loader device on.
LONGXPORTPAGE	ASCII Binary	1	1	To report 18 or 6 bytes medium transport element status descriptor if parameter is on or off.
NODEFERRCVDERR	ASCII Binary	0	1	The drive reports deferred recovered error as current recovered error, if set.
NODISCONFXDBLK	ASCII Binary	1	1	To turn on/off feature that prevents disconnecting on every fixed block data transfer
NORDYUAONUNLD	ASCII Binary	0	1	When set, Not Ready to Ready unit attention will be removed from the unit attention queue upon a successful unload.
PROTECTDIRONWP	ASCII Binary	0	1	To protect tape directory if the cartridge write-protect switch is in its write protect position.

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)**Table 5-43 EEPROM Vendor Unique Page Parameters (continued)*

<b>Name</b>	<b>Value Rep.</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Length (Bytes)</b>	<b>Usage</b>
REPBUSYINPROG	ASCII Binary	0	1	When set, report busy status if the drive is in the process of becoming ready.
REPORTRCVDPERRS	ASCII Binary	1	1	To report recovered error if parity error has been retried successfully, if set.
REPORTRCVRDERR	ASCII Binary	0	1	This parameter sets the default value of PER bit of READ / WRITE Error Recovery Mode page (01h).
REWINDONRESET	ASCII Binary	1	1	0 = Do not rewind on BUS RESET or BDR message (CAUTION: May have partial block data written to tape if reset occurs during WRITE).  1 = Rewind the tape medium to BOT on reset.
SCSIBUSDMATIMER	ASCII Decimal	2	1	The number of seconds until the drive times out waiting for ACK once DMA transfer started. When set to 0, the timer is set to infinite.
SCSIINQVS	ASCII Binary	0	1	To return vendor unique inquiry string, if set.
SCSIRDYEARLY	ASCII Binary	0	1	The drive reports READY status earlier, if set.
SCSIRESELRETRIES	ASCII Decimal	10	1	The number of reselection retries the drive makes before giving up. Each reselection retry occurs every 1 second. When set to 0, the drive does infinite reselection retries.
SCSIRESELNOP	ASCII Binary	0	1	SCSI Reserve / Release Unit commands are no operation, if set.

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)*

As an example of an EEPROM vendor unique page, the following figure shows a page that will modify the VENDORID parameter to "XXXYY."

0	0	0	Page Code (3Eh)
1	Page Length (0Fh)		
2	"v" (76h)		
3	"e" (65h)		
4	"n" (6Eh)		
5	"d" (64h)		
6	"o" (6Fh)		
7	"l" (72h)		
8	"i" (69h)		
9	"d" (64h)		
10	" " (20h)		
11	"X" (58h)		
12	"X" (58h)		
13	"X" (58h)		
14	"Y" (59h)		
15	"Y" (59h)		
16	<LF> (A0h) or (00h)		

*Figure 5-41 EEPROM Vendor Unique Page "Vendor ID" Example - Data Format*

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)*

The following example illustrates an EEPROM vendor unique page that modifies the FORCEDENSITY parameter to 1.

0	0	0	Page Code (3Eh)
1	Page Length (0Fh)		
2	"F" (46h)		
3	"O" (4Fh)		
4	"R" (52h)		
5	"C" (43h)		
6	"E" (45h)		
7	"D" (44h)		
8	"E" (45h)		
9	"N" (4Eh)		
10	"S" (53h)		
11	"I" (49h)		
12	"T" (54h)		
13	"Y" (59h)		
14	" " (20h)		
15	"1" (31h- ASCII)		
16	<LF> (A0h) or (00h)		

*Figure 5-42 EEPROM Vendor Unique Page "Forced Density" Example - Data Format*

*MODE SELECT (6) / (10) Command (15h) / (55h) (continued)***5.9.9 Changeable Parameters within MODE SELECT**

The following table lists the MODE SELECT command's changeable parameters and their default, minimum, and maximum values. Descriptions of the various parameters are provided in the discussions of the different mode pages within MODE SELECT. Note that parameter rounding is supported for all parameters except for the block descriptor length.

*Table 5-44 Changeable Mode Parameters within MODE SELECT*

<b>Page: Parameter</b>	<b>Default</b>	<b>Minimum</b>	<b>Maximum</b>
Header: Buffered Mode, Device Specific Byte	1	0	1
Block Descriptor Length	08h	00h	08h
Block Descriptor: Block Length			
2.0 GB and 6.0 GB Mode	0	0	40000h
10.0 GB and 20.0 GB Mode	0	0	FFFFFFh
READ / WRITE Error Recovery (01h): PER bit	0	0	1
Control Mode (0Ah): RLEC	0	0	1
Data Compression (0Fh): DCE	1	0	1
Disconnect / Reconnect (02h): Maximum Burst Size	0080h	0000h	FFFFh
Disconnect / Reconnect (02h): DTDC	0	0	3
Device Configuration (10h): WRITE Delay Time	C8h	Fh	1964h
Device Configuration (10h): SEW	1	0	1
Device Configuration (10h): Select Data Compression Algorithm	1	0	1

### 5.10 MODE SENSE (6) / (10) COMMAND (1Ah / 5Ah)

The MODE SENSE command allows the drive to report its media type, and current, or changeable configuration parameters to the host. It is a complementary command to MODE SELECT.

The command descriptor block for the 6-byte MODE SENSE (1Ah) is shown as follows. An illustration of the command descriptor block for the 10-byte MODE SENSE (5Ah) follows on the next page.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (1Ah)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Rsvd	DBD	Reserved		
2	PC		Page Code					
3	Reserved							
4	Allocation Length							
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5-43 MODE SENSE (6) Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

The 10-byte MODE SENSE command is required to request the Vendor-Unique EEPROM parameter page due to the large amount of data that parameter page contains. MODE SENSE (10) can be used to retrieve the other pages as well. Note that MODE SENSE (10) returns descriptor data in a different format than MODE SENSE (6).



*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)*

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (5Ah)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Rsvd	DBD	Reserved		
2	PC		Page Code					
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7 - 8	(MSB) Allocation Length (LSB)							
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5-44 MODE SENSE (10) Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)**Table 5-45 MODE SENSE Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
DBD	Disable Block Descriptors. If 0, device returns the block descriptor data. If set to 1, block descriptor information is not returned.
PD	Page Control. The Page Control field indicates the type of page parameter values to be returned to the host.  <b><u>PC</u></b> <b><u>Description</u></b>  00   Report Current Values  01   Report Changeable Values  10   Report Default Values  11   Report Saved Values
Page Code	This field allows the host to select any specific page or all of the pages supported by the drive.
Allocation Length	This field specifies the number of bytes that the host has allocated for returned MODE SENSE data. An allocation length of zero indicates that the drive will return no MODE SENSE data. This is not considered an error, and GOOD status is returned.

MODE SENSE may be either MODE SENSE (6) or MODE SENSE (10). MODE SENSE (6) data contains a 4-byte header followed by one 8-byte block descriptor, followed by zero or more variable length pages, depending on the Page Code and Allocation Length.

*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)***5.10.1 MODE SENSE Data Headers**

The MODE SENSE (6) and MODE SENSE (10) headers are illustrated in the following figures.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Mode Sense Data Length							
1	Media Type							
2	WP	Buffered Mode			Speed (0)			
3	Block Descriptor Length (08h)							

*Figure 5-45 MODE SENSE (6) Data Header - Data Format*

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 - 1	(MSB) Mode Sense Data Length (LSB)							
2	Media Type							
3	WP	Buffered Mode			Speed (0)			
4 - 5	Reserved							
6 - 7	(MSB) Block Descriptor Length (08h) (LSB)							

*Figure 5-46 MODE SENSE (10) Data Header - Data Format*

*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)**Table 5–46 MODE SENSE Data Header - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Mode Sense Data Length	This field specifies the length (in bytes) of the MODE SENSE data that is available to be transferred during the DATA IN phase. Note that the Mode Sense Data Length does not include itself.
Media Type	<p>The media type is determined by the drive and can be one of the following:</p> <p><b><u>Media Type - Description</u></b></p> <p>00h - Unknown or not present</p> <p>81h - Cleaning tape</p> <p>82h - DLTtape I or DLTtape II</p> <p>83h - DLTtape III</p> <p>84h - DLTtape IIIxt</p> <p>85h - DLTtape IV</p>
WP	Write Protect. If 0, this field indicates that the tape is write-enabled. If set to 1, it indicates that the tape is write-protected.
Buffered Mode	<p>This mode implements Immediate Reporting on WRITE commands via the Buffered Mode.</p> <p>If the field is 0, then the drive does not report a GOOD status on WRITE commands until the data blocks are actually written to tape.</p> <p>If the field is 1, then the drive reports GOOD status on WRITE commands as soon as the data block has been transferred to the buffer. This is the default configuration of the drive. Note that if Buffered Mode is not used, the tape drive will suffer a degradation in performance, but not in capacity.</p>
Speed	The tape drive supports only one speed. This is the default speed (0).
Block Descriptor Length	This field specifies the length (in bytes) of all of the block descriptors. Since the drive only supports one block descriptor, this value is 08h.

*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)***5.10.2 MODE SENSE Block Descriptors**

The following figure describes the MODE SENSE block descriptor that follows the MODE SENSE header. Descriptions of the MODE SENSE blocks are provided in Table 5-47.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Density Code							
1 - 3	(MSB) Number of Blocks (000000h) (LSB)							
4	Reserved							
5 - 7	(MSB) Block Length (LSB)							

*Figure 5-47 MODE SENSE Block Descriptor - Data Format*

*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)**Table 5-47 MODE SENSE Block Descriptor - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description																								
Density Code	The contents of this field match the density of the media, or 0 if the density is unknown: <table><tr><th>Density Code</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>00h</td><td>Use default density.</td></tr><tr><td>0Ah</td><td>6667 bpi MFM serial cartridge tape X3B5/86-199 (read only).</td></tr><tr><td>16h</td><td>10000 bpi MFM serial cartridge tape X3.193-1990 (read only).</td></tr><tr><td>17h</td><td>42500 bpi MFM serial cartridge tape X3B5/91- 2.6 GB (DLTtape III only).</td></tr><tr><td>18h</td><td>Same as 17h, but with 56 track pairs vs. 24 - 6.0 GB (DLTtape III only).</td></tr><tr><td>19h</td><td>62500 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 10.0 GB (DLTtape III only) /15.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt only)</td></tr><tr><td>1Ah</td><td>81633 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 20.0 GB (DLTtape IV only)</td></tr></table> <p>The density codes above are the <b>preferred</b> codes used to define density. Additionally, the following codes may be used, though use of the Data Compression Page is preferred (these codes are only returned if they were set using the MODE SELECT command):</p> <table><tr><td>80h</td><td>62500 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 10.0 GB (DLTtape III) /15.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt) without compression</td></tr><tr><td>81h</td><td>62500 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 20.0 GB (DLTtape III) /30.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt) with compression</td></tr><tr><td>82h</td><td>81633 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 20.0 GB (DLTtape IV) without compression</td></tr><tr><td>83h</td><td>81633 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 40 GB (DLTtape IV) with compression</td></tr></table>	Density Code	Description	00h	Use default density.	0Ah	6667 bpi MFM serial cartridge tape X3B5/86-199 (read only).	16h	10000 bpi MFM serial cartridge tape X3.193-1990 (read only).	17h	42500 bpi MFM serial cartridge tape X3B5/91- 2.6 GB (DLTtape III only).	18h	Same as 17h, but with 56 track pairs vs. 24 - 6.0 GB (DLTtape III only).	19h	62500 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 10.0 GB (DLTtape III only) /15.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt only)	1Ah	81633 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 20.0 GB (DLTtape IV only)	80h	62500 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 10.0 GB (DLTtape III) /15.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt) without compression	81h	62500 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 20.0 GB (DLTtape III) /30.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt) with compression	82h	81633 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 20.0 GB (DLTtape IV) without compression	83h	81633 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 40 GB (DLTtape IV) with compression
Density Code	Description																								
00h	Use default density.																								
0Ah	6667 bpi MFM serial cartridge tape X3B5/86-199 (read only).																								
16h	10000 bpi MFM serial cartridge tape X3.193-1990 (read only).																								
17h	42500 bpi MFM serial cartridge tape X3B5/91- 2.6 GB (DLTtape III only).																								
18h	Same as 17h, but with 56 track pairs vs. 24 - 6.0 GB (DLTtape III only).																								
19h	62500 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 10.0 GB (DLTtape III only) /15.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt only)																								
1Ah	81633 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 20.0 GB (DLTtape IV only)																								
80h	62500 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 10.0 GB (DLTtape III) /15.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt) without compression																								
81h	62500 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 20.0 GB (DLTtape III) /30.0 GB (DLTtape IIIxt) with compression																								
82h	81633 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 20.0 GB (DLTtape IV) without compression																								
83h	81633 bpi, 64 track pairs, serial cartridge tape - 40 GB (DLTtape IV) with compression																								
Number of Blocks	This field is sent as 0, indicating that all of the remaining logical blocks on the tape have the medium characteristics specified by the block descriptor.																								
Block Length	This field specifies the length (in bytes) of each logical block transferred over the SCSI bus. A block length of 0 indicates that the length is variable (as specified in the I/O command). Any other value indicates the number of bytes per block that are used for READ, WRITE, and VERIFY type commands that specify a fixed bit of 1 (fixed block mode).																								

*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)***5.10.3 MODE SENSE Mode Pages**

The following illustration depicts the variable length page descriptor.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS	0	Page Code					
1	Additional Page Length							
2	Page Defined or Vendor-Unique Parameter Bytes							

*Figure 5-48 MODE SENSE Page Descriptor - Data Format*

Descriptions of the MODE SENSE page descriptor fields are provided in the following table. Detailed descriptions of each of the MODE SENSE Pages follow.

*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)**Table 5–48 MODE SENSE Page Descriptor - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
PS	Parameters Savable. When 0, the supported parameters cannot be saved (savable pages are not supported). When set to 1, it indicates that the page can be saved in nonvolatile memory by the drive.
Additional Page Length	This field indicates the number of bytes in the page. Note that this value does not include bytes 0 and 1. The length is returned on MODE SENSE and must subsequently be set to the same value when performing MODE SELECT.

Page codes and pages that are supported are:

Page Code	Description	SENSE / SELECT	Section
00h	No Requested Page	SENSE	---
01h	READ / WRITE Error Recovery Page	BOTH	5.10.3.1
02h	Disconnect / Reconnect Page	BOTH	5.10.3.2
0Ah	Control Mode Page	BOTH	5.10.3.3
0Fh	Data Compression Page	BOTH	5.10.3.4
10h	Device Configuration Page	BOTH	5.10.3.5
11h	Medium Partition Page	BOTH	5.10.3.6
3Eh	EEPROM Vendor Unique Page	BOTH	5.10.3.7
3Fh	All Pages (Except EEPROM)	SENSE	---



*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)***5.10.3.1 READ / WRITE Error Recovery Page (01h)**

The tape drive supports the Error Recovery Page for READ and WRITE operations. The format for the page is illustrated in the following figure.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS (0)	0	Page Code (01h)					
1	Additional Page Length (0Ah)							
2	Rsvd	Rsvd	TB	Rsvd	EER	PER	DTE (0)	DCR (0)
3	READ Retry Count							
4 - 7	Reserved							
8	WRITE Retry Count							
9 - 11	Reserved							

*Figure 5–49 Read / Write Error Recovery Page - Data Format*

**MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)***Table 5–49 Read / Write Error Recovery Page - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
PS	Parameters Savable. Must be 0, the supported parameters cannot be saved (savable pages are not supported).
Additional Page Length	This field indicates the number of bytes in the page. Note that this value does not include bytes 0 and 1. The length is returned on MODE SENSE and must subsequently be set to the same value when performing MODE SELECT.
TB	Transfer Block. The Transfer Block (when not fully recovered) function is not supported.
EER	Enable Early Recovery. This function is always enabled (must be = 1).
PER	Post Error. This bit enables reporting of CHECK CONDITION to report recovered READ / WRITE errors. Default is 0.
DTE	Disable Transfer on Error. Set to 0. This feature is not supported.
DCR	Disable ECC Correction Bit. Set to 0. This feature is not supported.
READ Retry Count	This field reports the maximum number of re-reads that are attempted before declaring an unrecoverable error.
WRITE Retry Count	This field reports the maximum number of overwrite retries that are attempted before declaring an unrecoverable error.

**5.10.3.2 DISCONNECT / RECONNECT Page (02h)**

The tape drive supports the DISCONNECT / RECONNECT Page. The format for the page is illustrated in the following figure.

*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)*

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS	0	Page Code (02h)					
1	Additional Page Length (0Eh)							
2	Buffer Full Ratio (0)							
3	Buffer Empty Ratio (0)							
4 - 5	(MSB)	Bus Inactivity Limit (0)						(LSB)
6 - 7	(MSB)	Disconnect Time Limit (0)						(LSB)
8 - 9	(MSB)	Connect Time Limit (0)						(LSB)
10 - 11	(MSB)	Maximum Burst Size						(LSB)
12	Reserved						DTDC	
13 - 15	Reserved							

*Figure 5-50 Disconnect / Reconnect Page - Data Format*

*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)**Table 5–50 Disconnect / Reconnect Error Recovery Page - Field Descriptions*

<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
PS	Parameters Savable. When 0, the supported parameters cannot be saved (savable pages are not supported). When set to 1, it indicates that the page can be saved in nonvolatile memory by the drive.
Additional Page Length	This field indicates the number of bytes in the page. Note that this value does not include bytes 0 and 1. The length is returned on MODE SENSE and must subsequently be set to the same value when performing MODE SELECT.
Buffer Full Ratio	Not supported.
Buffer Empty Ratio	Not supported.
Bus Inactivity Limit	Not supported.
Disconnect Time Limit	Not supported.
Connect Time Limit	Not supported.
Maximum Burst Size	The value in this field specifies the maximum amount of data to be transferred without disconnecting. A value of 0 sets no limit. This value is given in 512 byte increments. For example, a value of 8 indicates 4K bytes. Values that are not multiples of 8 are rounded up to the nearest multiple of 8.
DTDC	Data Transfer Disconnect Control. The value in this field specifies the restriction when a disconnect is permitted.

*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)***5.10.3.3 Control Mode Page (0Ah)**

The Control Mode page allows the user to determine whether the tape drive returns a CHECK CONDITION status when one of the WRITE and READ counters has reached a specified threshold.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		Page Code (0Ah)					
1	Page Length (06)							
2	Reserved							RLEC
3	Queue Algorithm Modifier (0)				Reserved		Qerr (0)	DQue (0)
4	EECA (0)	Reserved				RAENP (0)	UAAENP (0)	EAENP
5	Reserved							
6 - 7	(MSB) Ready AEN Holdoff Period (0) (LSB)							

*Figure 5-51 Control Mode Page - Data Format*

*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)**Table 5–51 Control Mode Page - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Page Length	The value in this field indicates the number of bytes in the Control Mode page being transferred. The value for this byte is 06h.
RLEC	Report Log Exception Condition. This bit indicates whether the tape drive returns CHECK CONDITION status with sense key set to UNIT ATTENTION (06h) when one of its WRITE and READ error counters reaches a specified threshold, as follows:  0 = Do not return UNIT ATTENTION when a threshold has been met.  1 = Return UNIT ATTENTION when a threshold is met.
Queue Algorithm Modifier	Must be 0.
Qerr	Queue Error. Must be 0.
Dque	Disable Queuing. Must be 0.
EECA	Enable Extended Contingent Allegiance. Not supported; must be 0.
RAENP	Ready AEN Permission. Asynchronous event notification is not supported; must be 0.
UAAENP	Unit Attention AEN Permission. Not supported; must be 0.
EAENP	Enable AEN Permission. Asynchronous event notification is not supported; must be 0.
Ready AEN Holdoff Period	Not supported. Must be 0.

*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)***5.10.3.4 Data Compression Page (0Fh)**

The Data Compression page specifies parameters for the control of data compression.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS (0)	Rsvd	Page Code (0Fh)					
1	Page Length (0E)							
2	DCE	DCC	Reserved					
3	DDE (0)	RED (0)		Reserved				
4 - 7	(MSB) Compression Algorithm (LSB)							
8 - 11	(MSB) Decompression Algorithm (LSB)							
12 - 15	Reserved							

*Figure 5-52 Data Compression Page - Data Format*

*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)**Table 5-52 Data Compression Page - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
PS	Parameters Savable. Not supported; must be 0.
Page Length	The value in this field indicates the number of bytes in the Control Mode page being transferred. The value for this byte is 0Eh.
DCE	Data Compression Enable. The value returned for this bit depends on the current WRITE density of the tape drive:  0 = Write compression is Disabled  1 = Write compression is Enabled
DCC	Data Compression Capable. The value returned for this bit indicates whether this tape drive supports data compression:  0 = Data Compression is not supported  1 = Data Compression is supported and will process any data sent to it by the initiator according to the setting of the DCE bit (byte 02, bit 7).
DDE	Data Decompression Enable. The value returned for this bit indicates whether data decompression is enabled or not.  0 = Data Decompression is Disabled  1 = Data Decompression is Enabled  Note that when the tape drive reads compressed data from tape, it automatically decompresses the data before sending it to the initiator. The value for this bit, therefore, is always 1.
RED	Report Exception on Decompression. The tape drive does not report exceptions on decompression (boundaries between compressed and decompressed data). The value returned for RED is 00h.
Compression Algorithm	The value for this field is 10h. This indicates the Lempel-Ziv high efficiency data compression algorithm.
Decompression Algorithm	The value for this field is 10h. This indicates the Lempel-Ziv high efficiency data decompression algorithm. If EEPROM parameter EnaRepDCcomp is set, a value of 0 is reported if the last block read is not decompressed.



*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)***5.10.3.5 Device Configuration Page (10h)**

The tape drive supports the Device Configuration Page. The format for the page is illustrated in the following figure.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS (0)	0	Page Code (10h)					
1	Additional Page Length (0Eh)							
2	Rsvd	CAP (0)	CAF (0)	Active Format (0)				
3	Active Partition (0)							
4	WRITE Buffer Full Ratio (0)							
5	READ Buffer Empty Ratio (0)							
6 - 7	(MSB) WRITE Delay Time (LSB)							
8	DBR (0)	BIS (0)	RSmk	AVC (0)	SOCF (0)		RBO (0)	REW (0)
9	Gap Size (0)							
10	EOD Defined (0)			EEG (1)	SEW (1)	Reserved		
11 - 13	(MSB) Buffer Size at Early Warning (0) (LSB)							
14	Select Data Compression Algorithm							
15	Reserved							

*Figure 5-53 Device Configuration Page - Data Format*

*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)**Table 5-53 Device Configuration Page - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
PS	Parameters Savable. Not supported; must be 0.
Additional Page Length	This field indicates the number of bytes in the page. Note that this value does not include bytes 0 and 1. The length is returned on MODE SENSE and must subsequently be set to the same value when performing MODE SELECT.
CAP	Change Active Partition. Not supported.
CAF	Change Active Format. Not supported.
Active Format	Not supported.
Active Partition	This field indicates the current logical partition number in use. Only partition 0 is supported.
WRITE Buffer Full Ratio	Indicates how full the buffer should be before restarting writing to the medium. The tape drive sets this to 0 (unused) since it uses an automatic adaptive mechanism to dynamically adjust its ratio according to the average data rates over the SCSI bus.
READ Buffer Empty Ratio	Indicates how empty the buffer should be before restarting reading from the medium. The tape drive sets this to 0 (unused) since it uses an automatic adaptive mechanism to dynamically adjust its ratio according to the average data rates over the SCSI bus.
WRITE Delay Time	Indicates the maximum time (in 100 ms increments) the drive waits with a partially fully buffer before forcing the data to tape. Note that the buffer full/empty ratio, which is dynamic, can cause data to be written sooner than the WRITE delay time value indicates. The WRITE delay time defaults to 200 ms (C8h). This causes the buffer to be flushed in 20 seconds. Minimum value is 15 (Fh); maximum value is 6500 (1964h). This represents a range in delay from 1.5 seconds to 11 minutes.
DBR	Data Buffer Recovery. Not supported, must be 0.
BIS	Block Identifiers Supported. Set to 1.
RSmk	Report Setmarks. Not supported, must be 0.
AVC	Automatic Velocity Control. Set to 0.

*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)**Table 5-53 Device Configuration Page - Field Descriptions (continued)*

<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
SOCF	Stop on Consecutive Filemarks. Set to 0.
RBO	Recover Buffer Order. Set to 0.
REW	Report Early Warning. Set to 0 (do not report early warning EOM on reads).
Gap Size	Not supported. Set to 0.
EOD Defined	End of Data. Set to 00h.
EEG	Enable EOD Generation Bit. Set to 1 to indicate that the drive generates an EOD. The drive generates an EOD mark before any change of direction following a WRITE-type operation.
SEW	Synchronize at Early Warning. Set to 1.
Buffer Size at Early Warning	Not supported; must be 0.
Select Data Compression Algorithm	If set to 1, data compression is enabled. If 0, data compression is disabled.

*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)***5.10.3.6 Medium Partition Page (11h)**

The tape drive supports the Medium Partition Page. The format for the page is illustrated in the following figure.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS (0)	0	Page Code (11h)					
1	Additional Page Length (06h)							
2	Maximum Additional Partitions (0)							
3	Additional Partitions Defined (0)							
4	FDP (0)	SDP (0)	IDP (0)	PSUM (0)		Reserved		
5	Medium Format Recognition (01h)							
6 - 7	Reserved							

*Figure 5-54 Medium Partition Page - Data Format*

*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)**Table 5-54 Medium Partition Page - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
PS	Parameters Savable. Not supported; must be 0.
Additional Page Length	This field indicates the number of bytes in the page. Note that this value does not include bytes 0 and 1. The length is returned on MODE SENSE and must subsequently be set to the same value when performing MODE SELECT.
Maximum Additional Partitions	Not supported. Must be 0.
Additional Partitions Defined	This field specifies the number of additional partitions to be defined for the tape based on the settings of the SDP and IDP bits. The maximum allowed is the value returned in the Maximum Additional Partitions field. Since only one partition is supported, this field must be 0.
FDP	Fixed Data Partitions. Must be 0.
SDP	Select Data Partitions. Must be 0.
IDP	Initiator Defined Patrons. Must be 0.
PSUM	Partition Size Unit of Measure. Must be 0.
Medium Format Recognition	Set to 01h, indicating that automatic format recognition is supported.

*MODE SENSE (6) / (10) Command (1Ah / 5Ah) (continued)***5.10.3.7 EEPROM Vendor Unique Page (3Eh)**

The tape drive supports the EEPROM vendor unique page (3Eh). All the EEPROM parameters that are set via the MODE SELECT EEPROM Vendor Unique page are returned.

**NOTE**

Because of the length of the parameter list, use MODE SENSE (10) instead of MODE SENSE (6) to retrieve EEPROM parameters.

Because of the length of the list of EEPROM parameters, a 10-byte MODE SENSE command is required. If a 6-byte MODE SENSE command is used for retrieval, the data is returned as follows:

**Send a 10-byte MODE SENSE command to get the Parameter List.**

The data returned by the 10-byte MODE SENSE command for the EEPROM page is in the form of a MODE SENSE (10) data header followed by block and page descriptors.

The data in the page descriptor is organized in the form of a parameter header followed by the actual parameter's value. The parameter is as follows:

**Name T Current Default Minimum Maximum**

**Name** refers to the parameter name, for example, PRODUCTID or DEFAULTCOMPON.

**T** designates data type: "b" indicates binary, "A" indicates string type, and if there is no designator, the data is in decimal.

**Current, Default, Minimum, and Maximum** specify the current, default, minimum, and maximum values of the parameter.

### 5.11 PREVENT / ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL COMMAND (1EH)

This command enables or disables the unloading of the tape cartridge.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (1Eh)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				
2 - 3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							Prevent
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5-55 PREVENT / ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

*PREVENT / ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL Command (1Eh)*  
(continued)

*Table 5-55 PREVENT / ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL Command Descriptor Block -  
Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Prevent	<p>When set to 1, the UNLOAD button on the drive's front panel is effectively disabled, and the UNLOAD command does not unload the tape medium or the cartridge. The PREVENT / ALLOW status in the device is maintained separately by each initiator.</p> <p>When set to 0, the prevent state corresponding to that initiator is cleared. When all initiators have cleared their prevent states, the UNLOAD button and UNLOAD commands are enabled. By default, after power up, a hard reset, or Bus Device Reset message, the prevent medium removal function is cleared.</p> <p>If a Media Loader device is present, its MOVE MEDIUM command is prevented from removing a cartridge if PREVENT has been enabled.</p>



## 5.12 READ COMMAND (08H)

This command transfers one or more data blocks or bytes to the initiator starting with the next block on the tape.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (08h)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Reserved			SILI	Fixed
2 - 4	(MSB) Transfer Length (LSB)							
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5-56 READ Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

*READ Command (08h) (continued)**Table 5–56 READ Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
SILI	<p>Suppress Incorrect Length Indicator. If the SILI bit is set to 1 and the Fixed bit is set to 1, the target terminates the command with CHECK CONDITION status, sense key set to ILLEGAL REQUEST, and additional sense code of INVALID FIELD IN CDB.</p> <p>If the SILI bit is 0 and the actual block length is different than the specified transfer length, a CHECK CONDITION status is returned. Within the sense data, the Incorrect Length Indicator (ILI) bit and Valid bit will be set to 1. The sense key field specifies NO SENSE. The information bytes are set to the difference (residue) between the requested transfer length and the actual block length, or, in Fixed Block mode, the difference (residue) between the requested number of blocks and the actual number of blocks read. No more than transfer length blocks are transferred to the initiator and the tape is logically positioned after the block (EOM side).</p>
Fixed	<p>This bit specifies whether fixed-length or variable-length blocks are to be transferred, and gives meaning to the Transfer Length field of the READ command.</p> <p>When set to 0, variable-block mode is requested. A single block is transferred with the Transfer Length specifying the maximum number of bytes the initiator has allocated for the returned data.</p> <p>When the Fixed bit is set to 1, the Transfer Length specifies the number of blocks to be transferred to the initiator. This is valid only if the logical unit is currently operating in Fixed Block mode.</p> <p>When the Transfer Length is 0, no data is transferred and the current position on the logical unit does not change. This is not an error condition.</p> <p>A successful READ with Fixed bit set to 1 transfers (current block length) x (# of blocks x block size) bytes of data to the host. Upon termination of READ, the medium is logically positioned after the last block of data transferred (EOM).</p>

*READ Command (08h) (continued)***Filemark, End-of-Data, and End-of-Medium/Partition Handling**

If the tape drive reads a Filemark, it returns a CHECK CONDITION status. Within the sense data, the Filemark and Valid bits are set and the Sense Key field is set to NO SENSE. The information fields contain the residue count. The Additional Sense Code and Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are set to FILEMARK DETECTED. Upon termination, the medium is logically positioned after the Filemark (EOM).

If the drive detects End-of-Data (EOD) during a READ, the drive returns a CHECK CONDITION status. Within the sense data, the Valid bit is set and the Sense Key field is set to BLANK CHECK. The End-of-Medium (EOM) bit may be set if the drive determines that the tape is positioned past the PSEN marker. The information fields contain the residue count. The Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are set. Upon termination, the medium is physically positioned before EOD and after the last block on tape.

The meaning of EOD is different for a READ command than for a WRITE-related command. EOM is reported only when the physical EOM or End-of-Partition (EOP) is encountered. The drive returns a CHECK CONDITION status. The EOM and Valid bits are set and the Sense Key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information fields contain the residue count and the Additional Sense Code and Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are set to EOM/P DETECTED. The tape is physically positioned at EOM/P.

If any READ command cannot be successfully completed, the drive returns a CHECK CONDITION status. Further commands should attempt to move past the anomaly and to complete successfully.

**5.13 READ BLOCK LIMITS COMMAND (05H)**

The READ BLOCK LIMITS command directs the tape drive to report its block length limits.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (05h)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				
2 - 4	Reserved							
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5-57 READ BLOCK LIMITS Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

*READ BLOCK LIMITS Command (05h) (continued)*

The READ BLOCK LIMITS data shown as follows is sent during the DATA IN phase of the command. The command does not reflect the currently selected block size, only the available limits. MODE SENSE is the command that returns the current block size.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved							
1 - 3	(MSB) Maximum Block Length (LSB)							
4 - 5	(MSB) Minimum Block Length (0001h) (LSB)							

*Figure 5-58 READ BLOCK LIMITS Data - Data Format**Table 5-57 READ BLOCK LIMITS Data - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Maximum Block Length	The value in this field indicates the maximum block size. The tape drive supports a maximum block length of 16,777,215 (16 MB-1) for 10 GB or 20 GB format. A maximum block length of 256 K bytes is supported for 2.6 GB or 6.0 GB formats.
Minimum Block Length	The value in this field indicates the minimum block size. The tape drive supports a minimum block length of 1 byte.

### 5.14 READ BUFFER COMMAND (3Ch)

The READ BUFFER command is used in conjunction with WRITE BUFFER as a diagnostic function for testing the drive's data buffer for possible diagnostic data and for checking the integrity of the SCSI bus.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (3Ch)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Reserved			Mode	
2	Buffer ID							
3 - 5	(MSB) Buffer Offset (LSB)							
6 - 8	(MSB) Allocation Length (LSB)							
9	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5-59 READ BUFFER Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

*READ BUFFER Command (3Ch) (continued)**Table 5–58 READ BUFFER Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Mode	The tape drive supports the following values within this field. If any non-supported value is set, the drive terminates the command with a CHECK CONDITION status, ILLEGAL REQUEST sense key set. <div> <div>ModeDescription</div> <div>000bCombined Header and Data (subsection 5.14.1)</div> <div>010bData (subsection 5.14.2)</div> <div>011bDescriptor (subsection 5.14.3)</div> </div>
Buffer ID	Must be 0, 1 or 2. If any other value appears in this field, the tape drive returns a CHECK CONDITION status with ILLEGAL REQUEST sense key set.
Buffer Offset	Not supported; must be 0. If any other value appears in this field, the tape drive returns a CHECK CONDITION status with ILLEGAL REQUEST sense key set.
Allocation Length	This field specifies the maximum number of bytes that the initiator has allocated for returning data.

**5.14.1 Combined Header and Data Mode**

In this mode, the tape drive returns a 4-byte header followed by data bytes. The drive terminates the DATA IN phase when the Allocation Length bytes of header and data have been transferred or when all available data has been transferred to the initiator, whichever is less. The 4-byte READ BUFFER header is followed by data bytes from the target data buffer. The following figure illustrates the format of the header.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved							
1 - 3	(MSB) Available Length (LSB)							

*Figure 5–60 READ BUFFER Header - Data Format*

READ BUFFER Command (3Ch) (continued)

Table 5-59 READ BUFFER Header - Field Descriptions

Field Name	Description
Available Length	This field specifies the total number of data bytes available in the target's buffer. This number is not reduced to reflect the allocation length, nor is it reduced to reflect the actual number bytes written using the WRITE BUFFER command. Following the READ BUFFER header, the target transfers data from its data buffer.

5.14.2 Data Mode

In this mode, the DATA IN phase contains only buffer data.

5.14.3 Descriptor Mode

In this mode, a maximum of four bytes of READ BUFFER descriptor information is returned. The tape drive returns the descriptor information for the buffer specified by the Buffer ID. In this mode, the drive does not reject the valid Buffer IDs with a CHECK CONDITION status, but returns all zeros in the READ BUFFER descriptor.

The Offset Boundary in the following figure is 12 (0Ch), indicating that buffer offsets should be integral multiples of 4K.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Offset Boundaries (0Ch)							
1 - 4	(MSB) Buffer Capacity (LSB)							

Figure 5-61 READ BUFFER Descriptor - Data Format



### 5.15 READ POSITION COMMAND (34H)

The READ POSITION command is used to read a position identifier or SCSI Logical Block Address (LBA). The LOCATE command uses this identifier to position back to this same logical position in a high-performance fashion.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (34h)							
1	Logical Unit Number				Reserved			BT
2 - 8	Reserved							
9	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

Figure 5-62 READ POSITION Command Descriptor Block - Data Format

Table 5-60 READ POSITION Command Descriptor Block - Field Descriptions

Field Name	Description
BT	Block Type. This bit indicates how the position is to be interpreted. Since the tape drive uses the same logical block regardless of the setting of this bit, the setting is ignored. The logical block address values include all recorded objects: blocks and filemarks.

#### NOTE

The drive returns CHECK CONDITION with UNIT NOT READY sense key with the READ POSITION command if the media is not ready to be accessed.

*READ POSITION Command (34h) (continued)*

Data from READ POSITION takes the following format:

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	BOP	EOP	Reserved			BPU (0)	Reserved	
1	Partition Number							
2 - 3	Reserved							
4 - 7	(MSB)	First Block Location						(LSB)
8 - 11	(MSB)	Last Block Location						(LSB)
12	Reserved							
13 - 15	(MSB)	Number of Blocks in Buffer						(LSB)
15 - 19	(MSB)	Number of Bytes in Buffer						(LSB)

*Figure 5-63 READ POSITION - Data Format*

*READ POSITION Command (34h) (continued)**Table 5-61 READ POSITION Data - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
BOP	Beginning of Partition. When set to 1, indicates that the logical unit is at the beginning of partition in the current partition. When 0, indicates that the current logical position is not at the beginning of partition.
EOP	End of Partition. When set to 1, indicates that the logical unit is positioned between early warning and the end of partition in the current partition. When 0, it indicates that the current logical position is not between early warning and end of partition.
BPU	Block Partition Unknown. This bit is never set: the setting of the Block Type (BT) bit of READ POSITION CDB does not affect the block address values returned.
First Block Location	The block address associated with the current logical position: the next block to be transferred between the target and initiator if a READ or WRITE command is issued.
Last Block Location	The block address associated with the current physical position: the next block to be transferred to tape medium and form the target's buffer. If the buffer is empty, or has only a partial block, the same value as First Block Location is reported. The first block or filemark written onto the tape medium is at address 0.
Number of Bytes in Buffer	The number of data blocks in the target's buffer.
Number of Bytes in Buffer	The number of data bytes in the buffer that have not been written to the tape medium.

5.16 RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS COMMAND (1Ch)

The RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS command fetches the results of the last SEND DIAGNOSTIC command sent to the tape drive.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (1Ch)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				
2	Reserved							
3 - 4	(MSB) Allocation Length (LSB)							
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

Figure 5-64 RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS Command Descriptor Block - Data Format

Table 5-62 RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS Command Data - Field Descriptions

Field Name	Description
Allocation Length	Specifies the number of bytes of diagnostic page results the drive is allowed to send to the initiator.

*RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS Command (1Ch) (continued)*

The following data is returned by the drive as a result of the RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC command. Note that a REQUEST SENSE command should be used to obtain more detailed information following a CHECK CONDITION on a SEND DIAGNOSTIC command.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Controller Present Flag							
1	Controller Error Flag							
2	Drive Present Flag							
3	Drive Error Flag							
4	Media Loader Present Flag							
5	Media Loader Error Flag							

Flag set = 1 = failure. Flag not set = 0 = not present or no error

*Figure 5-65 RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS - Data Format*

This information indicates which of the main components of the tape drive subsystem may have failed diagnostic testing.

**5.17 RELEASE UNIT COMMAND (17H)**

The RELEASE UNIT command releases the drive if it is currently reserved by the requesting initiator. It is not an error to release the tape drive if it is not currently reserved by the requesting initiator. If the tape drive is reserved by another initiator, however, it is not released; the tape drive is only released from the initiator that issued the RELEASE command.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (17h)							
1	Logical Unit Number			3rd Pty	Third Party Device ID			Rsvd
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5–66 RELEASE UNIT Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

*RELEASE UNIT Command (17h) (continued)**Table 5-63 RELEASE UNIT Command Data - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
3rdPty	The third party release option for RELEASE UNIT allows an initiator to release a logical unit that was previously reserved using the third-party reservation option. If this bit is 0, then the third-party release option is not requested. If this bit is set to 1, the drive is released if it was originally reserved by the same initiator using the third-party reservation option and if the tape drive is the same SCSI device specified in the Third Party Device ID field.
Third Party Device ID	Required if the 3rdPty bit is 1. This field specifies the SCSI ID of the initiator whose third party reservation is being released. This field must be set if the initiator of the original third party RESERVE is the source of the RELEASE.

**Media Changer Considerations**

The optional Element reservation feature defined for Medium Changer devices in the SCSI-2 ANSI specification is not supported. The RELEASE command is defined the same as for the tape drive. The whole loader unit can be released. RESERVE / RELEASE of the Loader and Drive LUNs are handled independently.

5.18 REPORT LUNS COMMAND (A0h)

The REPORT LUNS command requests that the peripheral device logical unit numbers of known logical units in the target be sent to the applications client. The command only returns information about the logical units to which commands may be sent.

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Byte								
0	Operation Code (A0h)							
1 - 5	Reserved							
6 - 9	(MSB)Allocation Length(LSB)							
10	Reserved							
11	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

Figure 5-67 REPORT LUNS Command Descriptor Block — Data Format

Table 5-64 REPORT LUNS Command Descriptor Block—Field Description

Field	Description
Allocation Length	If the Allocation Length is not sufficient to contain the logical unit number values for all configured logical units, the device server still reports as many logical number values as will fit in the Allocation Length.
The format of the report of configured logical units is shown in Figure 5-68.	



*REPORT LUNS Command (0Ah) (continued)*

Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Byte								
0 - 3	(MSB) LUN List Length (n - 7) (LSB)							
4 - 7	Reserved							
8 - 15	(MSB) LUN (first LUN) (LSB)							
•								•
•								•
•								•
n-7 - n	LUN (last LUN, if more than one)							

*Figure 5-68 LUN Reporting Parameter List — Data Format*

The LUN List Length field contains the length in bytes of the LUN list that can be transferred. The LUN list length equals the number of logical unit numbers reported multiplied by eight. If the allocation length in the CDB is too small to allow transfer of information about all of the logical units configured, the LUN list length value is not adjusted to reflect the truncation.

**5.19 REQUEST SENSE COMMAND (03H)**

The REQUEST SENSE command causes the tape drive to transfer detailed sense data to the initiator.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (03h)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	Allocation Length							
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5–69 REQUEST SENSE Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

*Table 5–65 REQUEST SENSE Command Data - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Allocation Length	This field specifies the maximum number of sense bytes to be returned. The tape drive terminates the transfer when this number of bytes has been transferred or when all available sense data has been transferred to the host, whichever is less.

*REQUEST SENSE Command (03h) (continued)*

The REQUEST SENSE command causes the tape drive to transfer detailed sense data to the initiator.

The sense data is valid for a CHECK CONDITION or RESERVATION CONFLICT status returned on the previous command. The sense data bytes are preserved by the tape drive until retrieved by a REQUEST SENSE command, or until the receipt of any other command from the same initiator, though some commands, such as INQUIRY, do not change sense data.

If the tape drive receives an unsolicited REQUEST SENSE, it returns sense data with the appropriate values in the End of Media (EOM), Sense Key, Additional Sense Code, and Additional Sense Code Qualifier. The positional information provided reflects the logical position of the tape drive. The tape drive returns information based on the non-diagnostic data in its buffer as well as the data on tape medium. Additionally, bytes 25 through 28 contain the amount of tape to be written in 4 KB blocks.

REQUEST SENSE does not cause the drive to flush its buffered data to tape. Therefore, if the host requires the exact physical positioning of the tape medium, it should precede the REQUEST SENSE command with a WRITE FILEMARKS command with length 0 (Immed=0) specified. This forces the tape drive to flush any currently-buffered data to tape. A subsequent REQUEST SENSE command returns the actual physical (and logical) position of the tape drive to the initiator.

The following figure shows the format of REQUEST SENSE DATA.

*REQUEST SENSE Command (03h) (continued)*

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Valid	Error Code						
1	Segment Number (0)							
2	Filemark	EOM	ILI	Reserved	Sense Key			
3 - 6	(MSB) Information Bytes (LSB)							
7	Additional Sense Length							
8 - 11	(MSB) Command-Specific Information Bytes (LSB)							
12	Additional Sense Code (ASC)							
13	Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ)							
14	Sub-Assembly Code (0)							
15	SKSV	C/D	Reserved		BPV	Bit Counter		
16 - 17	(MSB) Field Pointer (LSB)							
18	Internal Status Code (VU)							
19 - 20	Tape Motion Hours							
21 - 24	Power On Hours							
25 - 28	Tape Remaining							

*Figure 5-70 REQUEST SENSE - Data Format*

*REQUEST SENSE Command (03h) (continued)**Table 5–66 REQUEST SENSE Data - Field Descriptions*

<b>Field Name</b>	<b>Description</b>
Valid	When set to 1, this field indicates that the information bytes contain valid information as defined in the ANSI SCSI-2 specification.
Error Code	<p>A value of 70h indicates a current error – the report is associated with the most recently received command.</p> <p>A value of 71h indicates a deferred error – the report is associated with a previous command and not as a result of the current command.</p> <p>No other values are returned in this field.</p>
Segment Number	This value of this byte is always 0.
Filemark	This bit indicates that the current command has read a Filemark.
EOM	End of Medium. This bit indicates that an End of Medium condition (End of Partition or Beginning of Partition) exists. The warning is also given by setting the Sense Key to NO SENSE and the Additional Sense Qualifier to End of Partition or Beginning of Partition.
ILI	Incorrect Length Indicator. This bit indicates that the requested logical block length did not match the logical block length of the data on the tape medium. Only READ or VERIFY may cause this bit to be set.
Sense Key	In most cases, Additional Sense Code and/or Qualifier information is available. The codes and qualifiers are covered in detail in Table 5-67.
Information Bytes	These bytes contain the differences (residue) of the requested length minus the actual length in bytes, blocks, or Filemarks, as determined by the command. Negative values are indicated by two's complement notation. The bytes are valid for all READ, WRITE, SPACE, and VERIFY tape commands for which a CHECK CONDITION status has been generated. The information bytes are 0 for MODE SELECT / SENSE, INQUIRY, READ BLOCK LIMITS, and TEST UNIT READY.
Additional Sense Length	This field specifies the number of additional sense bytes to follow. If the Allocation Length of the Command Descriptor Block is too small to transfer all of the Additional Sense bytes, the Additional Sense Length is not adjusted to reflect the truncation.

**REQUEST SENSE Command (03h) (continued)***Table 5–66 REQUEST SENSE Data - Field Descriptions (continued)*

Field Name	Description
Command Specific Information Bytes	Command Specific Information Bytes are handled as device-specific and can be logged by the operating system on error conditions. On tape medium errors, such an entry usually contains the current SCSI Logical Block Address.
Additional Sense Code	This field (and the field for Additional Sense Code Qualifier) provide additional information about the Sense Key and cause of a CHECK CONDITION status. Additional Sense Codes are discussed in detail later in this chapter.
Additional Sense Code Qualifier	This field (and the field for Additional Sense Code) provides additional information about the Sense Key and cause of a CHECK CONDITION status. Additional Sense Code Qualifiers are discussed in detail later in this chapter.
Sub-Assembly Code	Not used. Returned as 0.
SKSV	Sense-Key Specific Valid. When = 1, indicates that the Sense Key specific field is as defined by the International Standard.
C/D	Command / Data. When set to 1, this field indicates that the illegal parameter is contained in the Command Descriptor Block. A C/D set to 0 indicates that the illegal parameter is in the Parameter List from the initiator.
BPV	Bit Pointer Valid. When set to 1, this field indicates that the Bit Pointer field is valid and designates which bit of the byte designated by the field pointer is in error. For a multi-bit field, it points to the most significant bit of the field.
Field Pointer	This field indicates which byte of the Command Descriptor Block or Parameter List is in error. For a multi-byte field, the most significant byte is indicated.
Internal Status Code	Internal Status Codes are explained in detail in Appendix A.
Tape Motion Hours	This field reports the number of tape motion (i.e., head wear) hours. Format is given as a hexadecimal word (2 bytes).
Power On Hours	This field reports the total number of hours that drive power has been applied since its last power on cycle (not total power on hours over the device's lifetime). Format is given as a hexadecimal longword (4 bytes).
Tape Remaining	This field reports the amount of tape remaining in 4KB (4096 bytes) blocks.

*REQUEST SENSE Command (03h) (continued)**Table 5-67 Supported Sense Keys*

<b>Sense Key</b>	<b>Description</b>
0h	NO SENSE. Check the Filemark/EOM/ILI bits and the Additional Sense Code/Additional Sense Code Qualifier bytes.
1h	RECOVERED ERROR. This can be caused by rounding of Mode Parameters on a MODE SELECT, or may report that READ/WRITE error rates are reaching subsystem specification limits for optimal operation. The device may still be able to continue to function without any unrecovered errors for a long period of time, however.
2h	NOT READY. The tape medium is not ready for tape operation commands. Tape medium might not be present in the drive or may be in the process of loading or calibrating.
3h	MEDIUM ERROR. An unrecoverable WRITE, READ, or positioning error has occurred. Detailed device-specific information may be available.
4h	HARDWARE ERROR. The Additional Sense Code / Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields may present more specific information.
5h	ILLEGAL REQUEST. The Command Descriptor Block or supplied parameter data had an unsupported or illegal operation specified. Check bytes 15, 16, and 17.
6h	UNIT ATTENTION. Unit Attentions are created after a device reset, if the medium asynchronously becomes ready to the initiator, if another initiator changes Mode Parameters, and/or if the firmware is updated.
7h	DATA PROTECTED. The current tape medium is write-protected. This can be because the Write Protect switch on the cartridge is in its enabled position or if the tape medium is not the appropriate type (DLTtape III, DLTtape IIIxt, and DLTtape IV).
8h	BLANK CHECK. An End of Data or LongGap has been encountered.
Bh	COMMAND ABORTED. This key is generated when a command has been aborted by the tape drive for some reason. Check the Additional Sense Code / Additional Sense Code Qualifier bytes.
Dh	VOLUME OVERFLOW. This key indicates that the physical end of tape medium has been reached during writing. The initiator ignored the End of Medium condition and continued to write to tape.
Eh	MISCOMPARE. A compare error has occurred during READ by the self-tests invoked during execution of a SEND DIAGNOSTIC command.

*REQUEST SENSE Command (03h) (continued)**Table 5-68 Supported ASC / ASCQ in Hex*

<b>Sense Key</b>	<b>ASC</b>	<b>ASCQ</b>	<b>Description</b>
00 NO SENSE	00	00	No Additional Sense Code
		01	Unexpected FM Encountered
		02	End of Medium (EOM) Encountered
		03	SetMark Encountered
		04	Beginning of Medium (BOM) Encountered
		05	EOD Encountered
	5D	00	Tape Alert Failure Prediction Threshold Exceeded
01 RECOVERED ERROR	5D	FF	False Exception Condition
	00	17	Clean Requested (Non-Vendor Unique)
		0A	Error Log Overflow
		0A	Error Log Generated
		37	Rounded Parameter
		3B	Repositioning Error
		44	EEROM Copy 1 Area Bad
		44	EEROM Copy 2 Area Bad
		47	SCSI Parity Error
		48	IDE Message Received
		51	ERASE Failure
		53	Unload Tape Failure
		5B	Log Counter at Maximum
		80	Cleaning Requested
	80	03	Soft Error Exceeds Threshold
02h NOT READY	04	00	Unit Not Ready, Cause Nonreportable
		01	Unit Not Ready, Calibration in Process
		02	Unit Not Ready, LOAD Command Needed
		03	Unit Not Ready, Manual Intervention Needed
		30	Incompatible Format
		30	Unit Not Ready, Incompatible Media (Cleaning Cartridge) Installed
	3A	00	Media Not Present
	3A	80	Media Not Present, VU Cartridge Missing
	5A	01	Operator Media Removal Request
03h MEDIUM ERROR	00	00	Medium Error
	04	02	Unit Not Ready, LOAD Command Needed
	0C	00	WRITE Error
	11	00	Unrecovered READ Error
	11	08	Unrecovered READ Error, Incomplete Block Read
	14	00	Recorded Entity Not Found
	15	02	Position Error Detected by Read of Medium
	30	00	Cannot Read Medium

\* = Medium Changer specific command.



*REQUEST SENSE Command (03h) (continued)**Table 5-68 Supported ASC / ASCQ in Hex (continued)*

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	Description
MEDIUM ERROR (cont.)	30	01	Unknown Format
	3B	00	Sequential Positioning Error
	3B	08	Repositioning Error
	51	00	ERASE Failure
	80	00	Calibration Error
	80	01	Cleaning Required
	81	00	Directory Read Error
04h	08	00	LUN Communication Failure
HARDWARE ERROR	08	01	LUN Communication Timeout Failure
	0C	80	Write SCSI FIFO CRC Error
	11	80	Read SCSI FIFO CRC Error
	11	81	Block Port Detected EDC Error
	11	82	Block Port Detected Record CRC Error
	15	01	Random Mechanical Positioning Error
	21	01	Invalid Element Address
	3B	08	Repositioning Error
	3B	0D	Media Destination Element Full*
	3B	0E	Media Source Element Empty*
	40	80	Diagnostic/POST Failure, ROM EDC Error
	40	81	Diagnostic/POST Failure, RAM Failure
	40	82	Diagnostic/POST Failure, Bad Drive Status
	40	83	Diagnostic/POST Failure, Loader Diagnostics Failure
	40	84	Diagnostic/POST Failure, POST Soft Failure
	44	00	Internal Target Failure
	44	83	SCSI Chip Gross Error
	44	84	Unexplained Selection Interrupt
	44	85	Immediate Data Transfer Timeout
	44	86	Insufficient CDB Bytes
	44	87	Disconnect/SDP Sequence Failed
	44	88	Bus DMA Transfer Timeout
	44	8A	Over Temperature Condition
	44	C1	EEPROM Copy 1 Area Bad
	44	C2	EEPROM Copy 2 Area Bad
	44	C3	Both EEPROM Copy Areas Bad
	47	00	SCSI Parity Error
	48	00	IDE Message Received
	51	00	Erase Failure
	53	00	Media Load/Eject Failure
	53	01	Unload Tape Failure

\* = Medium Changer specific command.

**REQUEST SENSE Command (03h) (continued)***Table 5-68 Supported ASC / ASCQ in Hex (continued)*

<b>Sense Key</b>	<b>ASC</b>	<b>ASCQ</b>	<b>Description</b>
05h ILLEGAL REQUEST	1A	00	Parameter List Length Error
	20	00	Illegal Opcode
	20	81	Illegal Command While In Recovery Mode
	21	01	Invalid Element Address (Media Changer)
	24	00	Invalid CDB Field
	24	81	Invalid Mode on WRITE Buffer
	24	82	Media in Drive
	24	84	Insufficient Resources
	24	86	Invalid Offset
	24	87	Invalid Size
	24	89	Image Data Over Limit
	24	8B	Image/Personality is Bad
	24	8C	Not Immediate Command
	24	8D	Bad Drive/Server Image EDC
	24	8E	Invalid Personality for Code Update (CUP)
	24	8F	Bad Controller Image EDC
	25	00	Illegal LUN
	26	00	Parameter List Error, Invalid Field
	26	01	Parameter List Error, Parameter Not Supported
	26	02	Parameter List Error, Parameter Value Invalid
	30	00	Incompatible medium (cannot read medium)
	39	00	Saving Parameters Not Supported
	3B	0D	Media Destination Element Full*
	3B	0E	Media Source Element Empty*
	3D	00	Invalid Bits in ID Message
	53	02	Media Removal Prevented
	82	00	Not Allowed if not at BOT
06h UNIT ATTENTION	28	00	Not Ready To Ready Transition
	29	00	Reset Occurred
	2A	01	Mode Parameters Changed
	2A	02	Log Parameters Changed
	3F	01	Microcode has been Changed
	5B	01	Log Threshold Condition Met
07h DATA PROTECTED	27	80	Hardware WRITE Protect
	27	82	Data Safety WRITE Protect
08h BLANK CHECK	00	05	EOD Encountered
	08	00	LUN Communications Failure
		01	LUN Communications Time-out
0Ah	0A	00	Error Log Overflow
		80	Error Log Generated

\* = Medium Changer specific command.

**REQUEST SENSE Command (03h) (continued)***Table 5–68 Supported ASC / ASCQ in Hex (continued)*

Sense Key	ASC	ASCQ	Description
0Bh	2F	00	Commands Cleared by Another Initiator
COMMAND	43	00	Message Error
ABORTED	44	80	Unexpected Selection Interrupt
	44	82	Command Complete Sequence Failure
	44	83	SCSI Chip, Gross Error/ Illegal – Command Status
	44	84	Unexpected/Unexplained Residue Count in Transfer Register
	44	87	Disconnect Sequence Failed
	44	89	Command Cleared from Queue Without Other
	45	00	Select/Reselect Failure
	47	00	SCSI Parity Error
	48	00	IDE Message Error
	49	00	Invalid Message Error
	4B	00	Data Phase Error
	4E	00	Overlapped Commands Attempted
	83	00	Can not Retry Read/Write Data Transfer

0Dh VOLUME OVERFLOW (No Additional Sense Code or Sense Code Qualifier)

0Eh MISCOMPARE (No Additional Sense Code or Sense Code Qualifier)

---

\* = Medium Changer specific command.

---

**Filemark, End of Medium (EOM), and Incorrect Length Indicator (ILI) Bits**

Filemark (byte 2, bit 7), EOM (byte 2, bit 6), and ILI (byte 2, bit 5) are names of fields in the SCSI-2 REQUEST SENSE command. Any of these bits may be set to a 1 even though the Additional Sense Code (ASC) / Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ) bits have a value of 0.

For example:

- ? Filemark, EOM, ILI bit may be set to 1 with No Sense key (00h) and ASC / ASCQ = 00 00.
- ? Filemark, EOM, ILI bit may be set to 1 with Recovered Error (01h) and ASC / ASCQ = 00 00.
- ? Filemark, BOM, ILI bit may be set to 1 with Medium Error (03h) and ASC / ASCQ = 00 00.

## 5.20 RESERVE UNIT COMMAND (16H)

The RESERVE UNIT command reserves the specified tape drive for exclusive use by the requesting initiator or for another specified SCSI device.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (16h)							
1	Logical Unit Number			3rdPty	Third Party Device ID			Rsvd
2 - 4	Reserved							
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5–71 RESERVE UNIT Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

*Table 5–69 RESERVE UNIT Command Data - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
3rdPty	<p>The third party reservation option for RESERVE UNIT allows an initiator to reserve a logical unit for another SCSI device. This option is intended for systems that use COPY, and is implemented by the tape drive.</p> <p>If set to 1, logical unit is reserved for the SCSI device whose ID appears in the Third Party Device ID field. The tape drive ignores any attempt made by any other initiator to release the reservation and returns a GOOD status.</p> <p>If set to 0, no third party reservation is requested.</p>
Third Party Device ID	<p>If 3rdPty is set to 1 (indicating that an initiator has reserved the logical unit for another SCSI device), this field contains the ID number of that SCSI device for which the reservation was made.</p>

***RESERVE UNIT Command (16h) (continued)***

A reservation via the RESERVE UNIT command remains in effect until one of the following conditions is met:

- The initiator that made the reservation sends another RESERVE UNIT command.
- The tape drive is released via a RELEASE UNIT command from the same initiator.
- A BUS DEVICE RESET message is received from any initiator.
- A hard reset occurs.

The occurrence of the last two conditions is indicated by the drive returning a CHECK CONDITION status, sense key of UNIT ATTENTION on the next command following the condition. It is not an error to issue a RESERVE UNIT command to a drive that is currently reserved by the requesting initiator.

If another initiator has previously reserved the logical unit, the target returns a RESERVATION CONFLICT status.

If, after honoring the reservation, any other initiator attempts to perform any command except INQUIRY, REQUEST SENSE, or RELEASE UNIT, the command is rejected with a RESERVATION CONFLICT status. That logical unit ignores a RELEASE UNIT command issued by another initiator.

An initiator that holds a current reservation may modify that reservation (for example, to switch third parties) by issuing another RESERVE UNIT command to the tape drive.

**Medium Changer Considerations for RESERVE UNIT Command**

The optional Element Reservation feature defined for Medium Change devices as described in the ANSI SCSI-2 specification is not supported. The RESERVE command is defined the same as for the tape drive. The whole loader unit may be reserved. This is separate from a reservation of the tape drive.

The RESERVE / RELEASE commands operate on a LUN basis. The Medium Changer and the tape drive are generally handled as different devices. In the case of a reserved drive LUN, a MOVE MEDIUM command issued to the Medium Changer LUN cannot insert or remove a tape cartridge to or from a tape drive unless the tape drive is reserved by the same initiator.

## 5.21 REWIND COMMAND (01H)

The REWIND command directs the tape drive to position the tape at the beginning of the currently active partition (for DLTtape drives, this is BOM). Before rewinding, the tape drive writes any write data that is in the buffer to the tape medium and appends an End of Data marker.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (01h)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				Immed
2 - 4	Reserved							
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5-72 REWIND Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

*Table 5-70 REWIND Command Data - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Immed	Immediate. If this bit is set to 1, the tape drive first writes any remaining buffered data to tape medium and adds an EOD marker. It then returns status to the host <b>before</b> beginning the actual rewind operation. If this bit is 0, status will be sent <b>after</b> the rewind has completed.

## 5.22 SEND DIAGNOSTIC COMMAND (1DH)

The SEND DIAGNOSTIC command directs the tape drive to perform its self-diagnostic tests.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (1Dh)							
1	Logical Unit Number			PF (0)	Rsvd	Selfst	DevOfI	UnitOfI
2 - 4	Reserved							
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5-73 SEND DIAGNOSTIC Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

*Table 5-71 SEND DIAGNOSTIC Command Data - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
PF	Page Format. Not supported; must be 0.
Selfst	Self Test. This bit is used in conjunction with DevOfI and UnitOfI to specify the type of testing to be done. An explanation is provided in the following paragraphs.
DevOfI	Device Offline. This bit is used in conjunction with Selfst and UnitOfI to specify the type of testing to be done. An explanation is provided in the following paragraphs.
UnitOfI	Unit Offline. This bit is used in conjunction with Selfst and DevOfI to specify the type of testing to be done. An explanation is provided in the following paragraphs.

**SEND DIAGNOSTIC Command (1Dh) (continued)**

Two types of unit-resident diagnostic tests can be accessed:

**Electronics Self-Test (Level 1 Test)**

To invoke this level of diagnostic test, a major portion of the controller hardware and software must be functioning properly. The test is based on the premise that full power-up testing is not necessary, therefore, it is an extension of the power-up self tests that are run. The code ROM EDC is verified, two queues used by much of the controller software are checked by dequeuing and enqueueing items.

If a loader (Medium Changer) is configured, the test attempts a software reset on the loader. This test does not attempt a WRITE or READ to or from the tape medium. When complete, any errors that occur are reported in the extended Sense Data bytes. This Level 1 test has an execution time of approximately five (5) seconds.

Specify the Electronics Self-Test by setting the Selfst bit to 1, and both the DevOfI and UnitOfI bits to 0.

**Read / Write Functionality Test (Level 2 Test)**

The default version of this test does the following:

1. Writes 500 32 KB records on track 0.
2. Rewinds the tape.
3. Reads the records.
4. Positions to the beginning of track 1.
5. Writes 500 32 KB records on track 1.
6. Repositions to the beginning of track 1.
7. Reads the records.
8. Rewinds the tape.

The execution time for this Level 2 test is approximately 6 minutes, if calibration is not required. The test is specified by setting both the Selfst bit and the UnitOfI bit to 1 and ensuring that the DevOfI bit is 0. The test can accept a parameter list specifying test variables (shown in the following table).

If a parameter is specified, all parameters must be filled in and the parameter list length should be set to 12. If these requirements are not met, an ILLEGAL REQUEST is returned. The Selfst bit in this case must be 0.



***SEND DIAGNOSTIC Command (1Dh) (continued)***

The following table illustrates the possible settings of the Selfst, DevOfI, and UnitOfI bits and the effects of each setting on the resulting self-test:

*Table 5-72 SEND DIAGNOSTIC CDB Bits Selfst, DevOfI, and UnitOfI*

<b>Selfst</b>	<b>DevOfI</b>	<b>UnitOfI</b>	<b>Self - Test Effect</b>
0	0	0	Illegal Combination
0	0	1	Self-Test Level 2 with User Parameters
0	1	0	Illegal Combination
0	1	1	Self-Test Level 2 with Default Parameters
1	0	0	Self-Test Level 1 with Default Parameters
1	0	1	Self-Test Level 2 with Default Parameters
1	1	0	Self-Test Level 1 with Default Parameters
1	1	1	Self-Test Level 2 with Default Parameters

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 - 1	(MSB) Pattern Number (Table 5-72) (LSB)							
2 - 3	(MSB) Maximum Number of Test Passes (LSB)							
4 - 7	(MSB) Block Size (LSB)							
8 - 11	(MSB) Block Count (LSB)							

*Figure 5-74 SEND DIAGNOSTIC Parameter List - Data Format*

*SEND DIAGNOSTIC Command (1Dh) (continued)**Table 5-73 SEND DIAGNOSTIC Parameter List - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description																																	
Pattern Number	Indicates the type of data pattern to be used during the diagnostic tests. <table><tr><th>Pattern</th><th>Name</th><th>Data in Hex</th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>Rotate</td><td>Rotate through the other 9 patterns; change for each tape file.</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>All 0s</td><td>00 00 00 00 00</td></tr><tr><td>2</td><td>2F</td><td>FF FF FF FF FF</td></tr><tr><td>3</td><td>Alternating 1s and 0s</td><td>55 5A AA A5 55 5A AA A5</td></tr><tr><td>4</td><td>Marching 1</td><td>01 02 03 04 08 10 20 40 80</td></tr><tr><td>5</td><td>Marching 0</td><td>FE FD FB F7 EF DF BF 7F</td></tr><tr><td>6</td><td>MW</td><td>0E 0E 0E 0E 0E 0E 0E 0E</td></tr><tr><td>7</td><td>MFM</td><td>DE AD DE AD DE AD DE AD</td></tr><tr><td>8</td><td>IF</td><td>AA AA AA AA AA AA AA AA</td></tr><tr><td>9 (default)</td><td>Random Data</td><td></td></tr></table>	Pattern	Name	Data in Hex	0	Rotate	Rotate through the other 9 patterns; change for each tape file.	1	All 0s	00 00 00 00 00	2	2F	FF FF FF FF FF	3	Alternating 1s and 0s	55 5A AA A5 55 5A AA A5	4	Marching 1	01 02 03 04 08 10 20 40 80	5	Marching 0	FE FD FB F7 EF DF BF 7F	6	MW	0E 0E 0E 0E 0E 0E 0E 0E	7	MFM	DE AD DE AD DE AD DE AD	8	IF	AA AA AA AA AA AA AA AA	9 (default)	Random Data	
Pattern	Name	Data in Hex																																
0	Rotate	Rotate through the other 9 patterns; change for each tape file.																																
1	All 0s	00 00 00 00 00																																
2	2F	FF FF FF FF FF																																
3	Alternating 1s and 0s	55 5A AA A5 55 5A AA A5																																
4	Marching 1	01 02 03 04 08 10 20 40 80																																
5	Marching 0	FE FD FB F7 EF DF BF 7F																																
6	MW	0E 0E 0E 0E 0E 0E 0E 0E																																
7	MFM	DE AD DE AD DE AD DE AD																																
8	IF	AA AA AA AA AA AA AA AA																																
9 (default)	Random Data																																	
Maximum Number of Test Passes	This field specifies the number of test passes of the diagnostic to be run. If Maximum Number of Test Passes = 0, the test will loop continuously. A BUS RESET or a selection from the host sending an ABORT or BUS DEVICE RESET message terminates testing. Default = 1.																																	
Block Size	This field specifies the size of the blocks to be used. If this field is 0, random block sizes are used. Default = 8400 bytes (DLTape III media); 64 K (DLTape IV media).																																	
Block Count	<p>This field specifies how many blocks to WRITE / READ to and from starting on track 0, then moving to track 1.</p> <p>For example, if the Block Size and Block Count fields result in three (3) tracks worth of data, the test will:</p> <p>Write tracks 0, 1, 2</p> <p>REWIND, READ, and VERIFY tracks 0, 1, 2</p> <p>WRITE three tracks starting with 1: 1, 2, 3 and then REWIND to the beginning of track 1 and perform the READ and VERIFY pass.</p> <p>If Block Count is = 0, data is written until EOT is reached each time, so almost four (4) complete passes over the tape would result. Default = 0.</p>																																	

*SEND DIAGNOSTIC Command (1Dh) (continued)***NOTE**

Because of data generation and verification, this test only streams the tape for short periods of time. If Block Count is set very high, the test can take many minutes or even many hours to complete.

If the specified diagnostic test passes, a GOOD status is returned. Otherwise, a CHECK CONDITION is generated and the Sense Data contains information about the failure.

*Table 5–74 Sense Keys Used for SEND DIAGNOSTIC*

Sense Key	Description
3h	Medium Error. A positioning error has occurred in which the returned position does not match the expected position.
4h	Hardware Error. The Additional Sense Code (ASC) and any Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ) provide more specific information.
5h	ILLEGAL REQUEST. Illegal bit settings in the SEND DIAGNOSTIC command.
Eh	Miscompare. A compare error occurred during a READ operation.

Additional Sense Codes and Additional Sense Code Qualifiers that apply to SEND DIAGNOSTIC self-test results are described in the following table.

*Table 5–75 ASC / ASCQ for SEND DIAGNOSTIC*

ASC	ASCQ	Description
15h	2h	A positioning error has occurred in which the returned position does not match the expected position.
40h	80h	Level 1 ROM Test Failed.
40h	81h	Level 1 RAM Test Failed.
40h	82h	Level 1 Test Failed. Bad Drive Status.
40h	83h	Level 1 Test Failed. Loader Reset Failed.

5.23 SPACE COMMAND (11H)

The SPACE command provides a variety of positioning functions that are determined by Code and Count fields in the Command Descriptor Block. Both forward (toward End of Medium/End of Partition) and reverse (toward Beginning of Medium/Beginning of Partition) positioning are provided.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (11h)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Reserved		Code		
2 - 4	(MSB) Count (LSB)							
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

Figure 5-75 SPACE Command Descriptor Block - Data Format

Table 5-76 SPACE Command Data - Field Descriptions

Field Name	Description										
Code	<p>The code can be one of the following:</p> <table><tr><td><b>Space Code</b></td><td><b>Space by:</b></td></tr><tr><td>000b</td><td>Blocks</td></tr><tr><td>001b</td><td>Filemarks</td></tr><tr><td>010b</td><td>Sequential Filemarks</td></tr><tr><td>011b</td><td>End of Data</td></tr></table> <p>For 2.6 GB and 6.0 GB format, the tape drive supports count values 0, 1, and 2 only. For 10.0 GB and newer formats, compressed or noncompressed, the count value can be from 0 to 7FFFFFFh.</p>	<b>Space Code</b>	<b>Space by:</b>	000b	Blocks	001b	Filemarks	010b	Sequential Filemarks	011b	End of Data
<b>Space Code</b>	<b>Space by:</b>										
000b	Blocks										
001b	Filemarks										
010b	Sequential Filemarks										
011b	End of Data										

*SPACE Command (11h) (continued)**Table 5-76 SPACE Command Data - Field Descriptions (continued)*

Field Name	Description
Count	<p>When spacing over blocks or marks, the Count field is interpreted as follows:</p> <p>A positive value N causes forward motion over N blocks or marks. The tape is logically positioned after the Nth block or mark on the EOM or EOP side.</p> <p>A value of 0 causes no change in logical position.</p> <p>A negative value -N (two's complement notation) causes reverse movement over N blocks or marks. The tape is logically positioned on the BOM or BOP side of the Nth block or mark.</p> <p>When spacing to EOD, the Count field is ignored. Forward movement occurs until the drive encounters EOD. The position is such that a subsequent WRITE command would append data after the last object that has been written to tape before EOD.</p>

When executing SPACE, the tape drive implements the following hierarchy:

<b>Highest</b>	BOM/P or EOM/P
	EOD
	Filemarks
<b>Lowest</b>	Blocks

A SPACE command in the form "SPACE N blocks" will halt with GOOD status after the Nth block, or with CHECK CONDITION status on any occurrence of Filemark, EOD, BOM/P, or EOM/P. A command "SPACE N Filemarks" will halt on the Nth Filemark or on any occurrence of EOD, BOM/P, or EOM/P.

Depending on the size of blocks, read ahead data in the buffer allows some spacing requests to be satisfied without actual tape movement.

**NOTE**

Note that when spacing by sequential filemarks, the DLT 4000 tape drive handles up to 14 sequential filemarks and still reports back a CHECK CONDITION. After the fourteenth sequential filemark (not reached under normal operating conditions), if EOD is encountered, the drive sends back a status good message. Status is only reported properly on the DLT 4000 tape drive if the number of sequential filemarks is less than or equal to 14.

### 5.23 TEST UNIT READY COMMAND (00H)

The TEST UNIT READY command checks the tape drive to ensure that the unit is ready for commands involving tape movement. If the drive has a tape loaded, the command returns a GOOD status. Otherwise, CHECK CONDITION is reported.

Due to power cycle, code update, and tape loaded conditions, it is possible to get multiple check conditions on a TEST UNIT READY command.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (00h)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				
2 - 4	Reserved							
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5-76 TEST UNIT READY Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

#### Medium Changer Considerations

When directed at the Media Changer (Media Loader) LUN, this command returns CHECK CONDITION, Sense Key, or NOT READY if the MODE SELECT key is in the SERVICE mode and there is no 24 V signal (lack of 24 V signal usually indicates the loader assembly has been moved out of its sleeve far enough to trip the 24 V interlock). The media changer or loader is referenced as “4500” or “4700”.

### 5.25 VERIFY COMMAND (13H)

The VERIFY command directs the tape drive to verify one or more blocks beginning with the next block on the tape. Both CRC and EDCs are validated.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (13h)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Reserved		Immed	BC	Fixed
2 - 4	(MSB) Verification Length (LSB)							
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5-77 VERIFY Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

*VERIFY Command (13h) (continued)**Table 5–77 VERIFY Command Data - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Immed	Immediate. When set to 1, the VERIFY command completes before any tape medium movement is done (that is, when the processing has been initiated).
BC	Byte Check. When set to 0, the tape drive performs an internal CRC/ECC check of data. No data is transferred to the initiator.  When set to 1, the command is rejected.
Fixed	This bit specifies whether fixed-length or variable-length blocks are to be verified.  When set to 0, variable-block mode is requested. A single block is transferred with the Verification Length specifying the maximum number of bytes the initiator has allocated for verification.  When the Fixed bit is set to 1, the Verification Length specifies the number of blocks to be verified. This is valid only if the logical unit is currently operating in Fixed Block mode.
Verification Length	This field specifies the amount of data to verify, in blocks or bytes as indicated by the Fixed bit.



## 5.26 WRITE COMMAND (0AH)

The WRITE command transfers one or more blocks from the host to the current logical position. When in the Buffered Mode (the DLT tape drive default mode), the tape drive reports GOOD status on WRITE commands as soon as this data block has been transferred to the data buffer. Any check conditions will be experienced as deferred errors. Refer to the MODE SELECT command subsection for more information on Buffered Mode.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (0Ah)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Reserved				Fixed
2 - 4	(MSB) Transfer Length (LSB)							
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5-78 WRITE Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

**WRITE Command (0Ah) (continued)***Table 5–78 WRITE Command Data - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
Fixed	<p>The fixed bit specifies both the meaning of the Transfer Length field and whether fixed-length or variable-length blocks are to be transferred.</p> <p>When the Fixed bit is 0, Variable-length block mode is selected. A single block is transferred from the initiator and is written to the logical unit beginning at the current logical tape position. Upon successful termination, the tape is logically positioned after this block (on the EOM/P side). The Transfer Length specifies the number of bytes that the drive handshakes out from the initiator as one block.</p> <p>When the Fixed bit is 1, the Transfer Length field specifies the number of blocks to be transferred to the host beginning at the current tape position. This form of WRITE is valid only if the logical unit is currently operating in the Fixed Block mode – when it has been instructed to use fixed-length blocks with MODE SELECT. The current block length is the block length defined in the MODE SELECT command. Upon termination, the tape is logically positioned after these blocks.</p>
Transfer Length	<p>This field contains the length of the data transfer in bytes or blocks depending on whether Fixed or Variable block mode is selected.</p> <p>When the Transfer Length is 0, no data is transferred and the current position on the logical unit is not changed.</p>

**Exception Conditions**

If End of Tape (EOT) is detected while writing, the tape drive finishes writing any buffered data. The command terminates with CHECK CONDITION status. Within the sense data, the EOM bit is set, the Sense Key is set to NO SENSE, and the Additional Sense code and Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are set to EOM/P detected. The drive attempts to complete any subsequent writes, returning a CHECK CONDITION status in each case.

If the tape drive encounters the physical End of Medium (EOM) when attempting WRITE, a CHECK CONDITION status is returned. Within the sense data, the EOM and Valid bits are set, and the Sense Key field is set to Volume Overflow. The Information fields contain the residue count and the Additional Sense code and Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are set to EOM/P Detected. The tape is physically positioned at EOM/P.

### 5.27 WRITE BUFFER COMMAND (3BH)

The WRITE BUFFER command is used with READ BUFFER as a diagnostic function for testing the device data buffer, DMA engine, SCSI bus interface hardware, and SCSI bus integrity. It is also used for downloading and updating DLT microcode (firmware).

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (3Bh)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Reserved		Mode		
2	Buffer ID (00h)							
3 - 5	(MSB) Buffer Offset (000000h) (LSB)							
6 - 8	(MSB) Parameter List / Data Length (LSB)							
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

Figure 5-79 WRITE BUFFER Command Descriptor Block - Data Format

**WRITE BUFFER Command (3Bh) (continued)***Table 5-79 WRITE BUFFER Command Data - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description										
Mode	The tape drive supports the following values within the field. If any other value is set, the drive terminates the command with CHECK CONDITION status and an ILLEGAL REQUEST sense key set.  <table><tr><th>Mode</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>000b</td><td>WRITE combined header and data (Section 5.27.1)</td></tr><tr><td>010b</td><td>WRITE data (Section 5.27.2)</td></tr><tr><td>100b</td><td>Download Microcode (Section 5.27.3)</td></tr><tr><td>101b</td><td>Download Microcode and Save (Section 5.27.4)</td></tr></table>	Mode	Description	000b	WRITE combined header and data (Section 5.27.1)	010b	WRITE data (Section 5.27.2)	100b	Download Microcode (Section 5.27.3)	101b	Download Microcode and Save (Section 5.27.4)
Mode	Description										
000b	WRITE combined header and data (Section 5.27.1)										
010b	WRITE data (Section 5.27.2)										
100b	Download Microcode (Section 5.27.3)										
101b	Download Microcode and Save (Section 5.27.4)										
Buffer ID	For all of the modes described for the Mode field, only a Buffer ID of 0 is supported. If the Buffer ID field is a value other than 0, the command is rejected. The target detects and rejects commands that would overrun the buffer.										
Buffer Offset	See Sections 5.26.1 through 5.26.4 for the appropriate settings.										

**5.27.1 Write Combined Header and Data Mode (000b)**

The data to be transferred is preceded by a 4-byte header consisting entirely of reserved bytes. This header is discarded (not stored within the buffer). The buffer offset field must be 0 for this mode.

**5.27.2 Write Data Mode (010b)**

Similar to Header and Data Mode, except there is no header in the data passed to the target. Any potential buffer overruns are detected and the command is rejected. The buffer offset field must be 0 for this mode.

**CAUTION**

During the actual reprogramming of the FLASH EEPROM, if any type of powerfail occurs, or if the reprogramming fails before completion, the tape drive subsystem becomes unusable and the tape drive must be replaced.

## *WRITE BUFFER Command (3Bh) (continued)*

### **5.27.3 Download Microcode Mode (100b)**

Using buffer offsets, the host can download the firmware image into the target's buffer in pieces. These commands do not cause the new image to become active. A Download and Save Mode WRITE BUFFER command must be issued for the image to become active.

The tape drive must be empty of tape medium to allow downloading of an image. This is a safeguard against accidentally starting a firmware update. If a tape cartridge is loaded when all or part of a firmware image has been downloaded, another WRITE BUFFER with Download Microcode mode will be rejected. The firmware image must be downloaded in integral multiples of 4K bytes.

Any error on a WRITE BUFFER command causes any downloaded image data to be discarded and the download must be restarted from the beginning.

#### **CAUTION**

During the actual reprogramming of the FLASH EEPROM, if any type of powerfail occurs, or if the reprogramming fails before completion, the tape drive subsystem becomes unusable and the tape drive must be replaced.

### **5.27.4 Download Microcode and Save Mode (101b)**

This mode is used to download and save the entire image at once, or to download the image and save it, or to cause a save operation after the image data has been downloaded using the Download Microcode mode (without the Save). This mode of the WRITE BUFFER command causes the image data to be verified and the Flash EEPROM firmware area to be updated. During the reprogramming of the Flash EEPROM, the WRITE PROTECT and Drive Activity LED's on the drive's front panel blinks. Also, when it is updating the EEPROM, it disconnects from the SCSI bus and will not respond until the update is complete.

When the Save operation is successfully completed, the firmware restarts itself, causing the Power On Self Test (POST) to be run, and two UNIT ATTENTION conditions are generated: POWER UP RESET and OPERATING CODE HAS CHANGED.

**5.28 WRITE FILEMARKS COMMAND (10H)**

The WRITE FILEMARKS command directs the tape drive to write the specified number of Filemarks beginning at the current logical position on tape. If the Immediate bit is not set, any data or Filemarks in the WRITE cache buffer are written to tape.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (10h)							
1	Logical Unit Number			Reserved			WSMk (0)	Immed
2 - 4	(MSB) Number of Filemarks (LSB)							
5	Unused		Reserved				Flag	Link

*Figure 5–80 WRITE FILEMARKS Command Descriptor Block - Data Format*

*WRITE FILEMARKS Command (10h) (continued)**Table 5-80 WRITE FILEMARKS Command Data - Field Descriptions*

Field Name	Description
WSmk	Write Setmark. Must be 0. This tape drive does not support Setmarks.
Immed	Immediate. When this bit is set to 1, the tape drive returns status as soon as the Command Descriptor Block (CDB) has been validated, unless the Filemark count is 0, or greater than 1 (since either condition causes the WRITE buffer to be flushed to tape medium).  When set to 0, this bit indicates the status will not be returned until the operation is complete.
Number of Filemarks	This field contains the number of consecutive Filemarks to be written to tape medium. A value of 0 is not considered to be an error; GOOD status is returned.

The WRITE FILEMARKS command may be used to force the tape drive to write any buffered WRITE data to the tape medium. If the tape drive is in buffered mode, and WRITE FILEMARKS is received, the requested filemarks are appended to the data and the WRITE buffer contents are flushed to tape medium. A value of 0 in the Number of Filemarks field indicates that no filemarks are to be written to the tape medium, but still flushes any WRITE data to the tape medium.

If End of Tape (EOT) is detected while writing filemarks, the tape drive finishes writing any buffered data and terminates with CHECK CONDITION status. Within the Sense data, the End of Medium (EOM) bit is set, the Sense Key field is set to NO SENSE and the Additional Sense Code and Additional Sense Code Qualifier fields are set to EOM/P DETECTED. The tape drive attempts to complete any subsequent WRITE FILEMARKS, returning a CHECK CONDITION status in each case. If the tape drive encounters the physical EOM when attempting a WRITE FILEMARKS, it returns CHECK CONDITION status.





## Appendix A

# DEFINITION OF VENDOR UNIQUE SENSE DATA INFORMATION

---

*This appendix lists the internal status codes with their descriptions.*

The internal status code is located at byte offset 18 of the REQUEST SENSE data and may be available for certain types of failures.

### NOTE

Byte 18 of the REQUEST SENSE data has two formats: a byte code and a bit flags format. The bit flags format is used when there is no internal status code to report and can be quickly distinguished by checking to see if bit 7 of byte 18 is set to 1.

*Table A-1 Internal Status Codes*

Decimal	Hexadecimal	Description
0	0	No Meaning
1	1	Reed-Solomon Error Correction Code Recovery
2	2	READ or WRITE Block Retry (Soft Retry)
3	3	REPOSITION Command Aborted
4	4	Controller Has Stopped Reading
5	5	No Control or Data Buffers Available
6	6	Target Delivered in Read Ahead
7	7	Logical EOT Encountered, 2 Filemarks
8	8	Command Connection Dropped

Table A-1 Internal Status Codes (continued)

Decimal	Hexadecimal	Description
9	9	Cleared from Queue
10	0A	Missing Data Block – READ only
11	0B	Gap Within Object (Missing Block in Record)
12	0C	Record on Tape Larger Than Requested
13	0D	Compare Error
14	0E	Successive Blocks Missing Across Objects
15	0F	Drive State Not Valid for Command
16	10	Drive Error
17	11	Drive Communication Timeout Error
18	12	Drive Unloaded
19	13	Unable to WRITE – No CRC
20	14	Block to Append To Not Found
21	15	Data Synchronization Error (READ after WRITE Not Happening)
22	16	Missing Block(s) in Current Entity
23	17	Drive Hardware WRITE Protected
24	18	Reposition-Target Not Found
25	19	Log Gap Encountered (Blank Tape or No Data Encountered)
26	1A	End of Data or Filler Block Encountered
27	1B	Filemark Encountered
28	1C	EDC Error Found by GPSP3 – FECC RAM Bad
29	1D	Beginning of Medium Encountered
30	1E	EDC Error

Table A-1 Internal Status Codes (continued)

Decimal	Hexadecimal	Description
31	1F	Hard WRITE Error – GPSP3 Underrun
32	20	Hard WRITE Error – READ Sync Timeout
33	21	Hard WRITE Error – Overshoot Append
34	22	Hard WRITE Error – CRC Error
35	23	EDC Error Found by GPSP3 – FECC RAM OK
36	24	Timeout on Command to Medium Changer
37	25	Medium Changer UART Error (Overrun)
38	26	Medium Changer Response Length Error
39	27	Medium Changer Detected Error
40	28	Invalid Source Slot
41	29	Invalid Destination Slot
42	2A	Source Slot Empty
43	2B	Destination Slot Full
44	2C	Medium Changer Motion Error
45	2D	Medium Changer/Drive Interface Error
46	2E	Medium Changer/Slot Interface Error
47	2F	Medium Changer Mechanical Error
48	30	Medium Changer Hardware Error
49	31	Medium Changer Controller Error
50	32	Unrecognized Medium Changer Subcommand
51	33	Medium Changer Fatal Error
52	34	Medium Changer is in Manual Mode
53	35	68020 Detected Communication Error with Servo Area
54	36	68020 Detected Drive Command Timeout

Table A-1 Internal Status Codes (continued)

Decimal	Hexadecimal	Description
55	37	Calibration Failure
56	38	Bad Tape Format

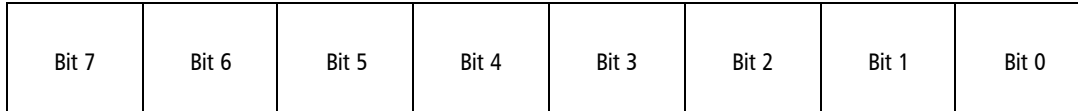


Figure A-1 Internal Status Bits

Table A-2 Internal Status Bit Flags

Bit No.	Description															
0	If set to 1, Cleaning Light is Illuminated, otherwise Light is off.															
1 - 2	Tape Directory Status Bits: <table><tr><th>Bit 2</th><th>Bit 1</th><th></th></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Good Status</td></tr><tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Unknown Status</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Partial Directory (will be rebuilt when tape is undergoing READ/WRITE)</td></tr><tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>No Directory (will be rebuilt when tape is undergoing READ/WRITE)</td></tr></table>	Bit 2	Bit 1		0	0	Good Status	0	1	Unknown Status	1	0	Partial Directory (will be rebuilt when tape is undergoing READ/WRITE)	1	1	No Directory (will be rebuilt when tape is undergoing READ/WRITE)
Bit 2	Bit 1															
0	0	Good Status														
0	1	Unknown Status														
1	0	Partial Directory (will be rebuilt when tape is undergoing READ/WRITE)														
1	1	No Directory (will be rebuilt when tape is undergoing READ/WRITE)														
3 - 6	Reserved															
7	If set to 1, the Internal Status Byte (Byte 18) is in Bit Flags format; otherwise Byte 18 contains a status code.															

## Appendix B

# EEPROM-RESIDENT BUGCHECK AND EVENT LOGS

---

*This appendix provides an explanation of the event logs (information packets) stored in semi-permanent, non-volatile memory of the tape drive. These packets can be retrieved via the SCSI LOG SENSE command with Page Code 07h.*

### B.1 EEPROM PACKETS (LAST N EVENTS)

The tape drive keeps certain event logs in semi-permanent, non-volatile memory (EEPROM, in this case) located on the tape drive's controller PCB. There is storage enough within EEPROM for a total of 14 of these logs, or packets, each packet consisting of 98 bytes (96 data bytes plus two control bytes) of information. Packets may be written for different reasons and several packet types exist.

The information in the event logs does not indicate that a tape drive or tape medium has failed but is useful in isolating problems that may be occurring.

The logs are maintained in a circular buffer: a new entry overwrites the oldest existing entry. At any point in time, the most recent 14 logs are kept.

The EEPROM information packets can be retrieved via the SCSI-2's LOG SENSE command with Page Code 07 (Last n Error Events Page).

The packet type field defines the content as well as the format of the data portion of the packet. These packet types are detailed in this Appendix. Note that the byte offsets in the structure layout diagrams are reference relative to the beginning of the 98-byte EEPROM log envelope.

### B.2 BUGCHECK PACKETS

Bugchecks are the result of some software-detected errors. For example, a hardware failure or an internal system consistency failure may cause a bugcheck. These events cause bugcheck packets to be written to EEPROM.

The most important information within the packet is the error code. The more common bugcheck codes are listed in Table B—1. A full listing of all possible codes is not provided: they are typically associated with firmware or product development and are not expected once the product is released. Analysis of the other information saved within an EEPROM bugcheck packet requires the in-depth firmware knowledge to interpret and/or attempt to determine the actual cause.

*Table B-1 Bugcheck Packet Error Codes (Bytes 9 - 10)*

<b>Error Code</b>	<b>Meaning and Possible Cause</b>
E204h	Unexpected Timer 2 Interrupt – Possible Tape Drive Controller PCB fault
EE01h	Spurious Non-Maskable Interrupt – Possible Tape Drive Controller PCB fault
EE02h	Spurious 8524 Timer Interrupt – Possible Tape Drive Controller PCB fault
EE03h	Spurious Level 5 Interrupt (GPSP) – Possible Tape Drive Controller PCB fault
EE04h	Spurious Drive Comm Interrupt – Possible Tape Drive Controller PCB fault
EE05h	Spurious Loader Comm Interrupt – Possible Tape Drive Controller PCB fault
EE06h	Spurious Diag Comm Interrupt – Possible Tape Drive Controller PCB fault
EE08h	Watch Dog Expiration – SCSI bus may have lost termination, or Tape Drive Controller PCB is constantly receiving non-tape commands.
EE09h	Spurious Power Fail Signal Received – Possible Power Supply fault.
EE0Dh	Spurious Level 6 Interrupt (GPSP) – Possible Tape Drive Controller PCB fault
F202h	Loader Time-Out – Possible Media Loader fault

### B.2.1 POST Failure Packets

POST failure packets are stored whenever the Power On Self Test logic detects a failure of any kind. Each failure is encoded as a 4-byte vector. In some cases, multiple vectors may be stored.

If logging of POST failures occurs, contact a service representative.

## B.2.2 Event Log Packets

Event log packets are non-fatal and can occur to log information about significant events. Refer to Table B-2 for a listing of the existing error codes that are found within event log packets.

Table B-2 Event Log Error Codes (Bytes 9 – 10)

Error Code	Meaning and Possible Cause
[ 0xA400	Hard READ Error Log - Possible Media, Cleaning Required.
0xA401	Hard WRITE Error Log - Possible Media, Cleaning Required.
0xA402	Drive Error Log – Possible Tape Drive Controller PCB or Leader.
0xA403	Loader Error Log – Possible Loader Robotics.
[ 0xA404	Calibration Log1 Error Entry – Possible Cleaning Required, Media.
0xA405	Calibration Log2 Error Entry – 2nd Part of Error Code 0xA404 Calibration Information.
0xA406	EDC Error Detected by SCSI Port Code – Possible Media, Tape Drive Controller PCB.
[ 0xA407	Directory Read Fail *
0xA408	Directory Write Fail *
0xA409	Unload Information Statistics
0xA40B	Media Quality Log – Possible Media.
0xA40C	Spurious Eject
0x40D	Directory Write on Unload Retries Failed * - Possible Cleaning Required.
0x40E	Directory Write after Read Retries Failed * - Possible Cleaning Required.
0x40F	Directory Read Retries Failure * - Possible Cleaning Required, Media.

**Note:** These logs are informational only.

[ = These error codes can be individual or can be multiple media error code packet.

\* Directory Read and Write Fail recoverable events are discussed below.

### Directory Failure Event Log Packets

Directory failure event logs are written when a directory read or directory write request fails for any reason. Figure B-1 shows the data format and Table B-3 provides the description of important fields within the packet. Note that the byte count begins at Byte 13, the location of the 1st event log byte within the event log packet.

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
13	Saved Max Overwrites							
14	Saved Max Rereads							
15	Saved Max Rewrites							
16	Dir Called Mode							
17 - 18	Tape Format (when called)							
19 - 20	New Tape Format							
21	Flags							
22	Primary Status							
23	Secondary Status							
24	Reserved							
25	Missing Block Count							
26	Total Expected LBNs							
27 - 28	Servo EOT Address							
29 - 32	Unique Media ID							
33 - 36	CR-MSG Buffer Address							

Figure B-1 Directory Failure Event Package – Data Format



Table B-3 Directory Failure Event Package – Field Descriptions

Field	Description
Saved Overwrites / Rereads / Rewrites	These fields serve as temporary counters and have no use in interpreting the directory failure packets.
Directory Called Mode	<p>A code that specifies the original reason for the directory call.</p> <p>A value of 1 indicates a directory READ (on LOAD).</p> <p>A value of 2 indicates a directory WRITE (on UNLOAD).</p> <p>A value of 3 indicates a directory WRITE (on WRITE from BOT).</p>
Tape Format Called / New	These fields contain the TMSCP values for the tape format both prior to and after the directory operation.
Flags	<p>A bit-mapped field that provides additional status information.</p> <p>Bit Mask Meaning</p> <p>0x01h READ on LOAD operation complete</p> <p>0x02h Inhibit further WRITE operations unless WRITE from BOT</p> <p>0x04h LBN 0 was found intact</p> <p>0x08h Directory WRITE failed</p> <p>0x10h Tape format mismatch</p> <p>0x20h Event log generated</p> <p>0x40h Tape format unknown</p> <p>0x80h Reserved</p>



## Appendix C

# UPDATING THE FIRMWARE

---

*This appendix explains how to update the tape drive's PCBA-resident firmware.*

### C.1 OVERVIEW

Using the tape drive's front panel and a tape with the updated firmware image, you can update the tape drive's PCBA-resident firmware.

#### CAUTION

Version 2 of the DLT 4000 tape drive requires firmware code release V130 or higher. The drive will not function properly if a lower version of firmware code is installed.

If a powerfail occurs during the firmware update process (when the new image is actually being programmed into the FLASH EEPROMs), the tape drive's PCBA will be rendered unusable. When performing a firmware update, take all possible precautions to prevent power failure to the tape drive.

### C.2 CREATING A FIRMWARE UPDATE TAPE

To update the tape drive's PCBA firmware, you need a tape cartridge with a copy of the new firmware image. The firmware image must be byte-written without compression onto the tape using the appropriate block size as defined in Table C-1. The image must be "copied" onto the tape instead of using the backup utility.

*Table C-1 Block Size Used for Firmware Update Tape*

<b>Tape Format</b>	<b>Density</b>	<b>Upgrade Tape Block</b>
DLTtape III	2.6 GB 6.0 GB 10.0 GB	4 Kbytes Multiple 4 Kbytes Multiple 4 Kbytes Multiple
DLTtape IIIxt	15.0 GB	4 Kbytes Only
DLTtape IV	20.0 GB	4 Kbytes Only

On UN\*X systems, use the FTP utility to transfer the binary firmware image. Be sure to specify “type image” before using the “get” or “put” commands, otherwise extra characters may be added to the file, causing the image file to be invalid. The image file should be exactly 1286 \* 512 bytes in size.

When making the update tape, copy the image file to the tape media using a block size as defined in Table C-1, that is dd, ltf, and so on. The tape must be uncompressed.

### **C.3 FIRMWARE UPDATE PROCEDURE**

This section describes the procedure to update the firmware of the tape drive’s PCBA. The update requires a cartridge that holds the update firmware image. Firmware updates from a host are also supported (see the section on the SCSI command WRITE BUFFER in Chapter 5).

#### **CAUTION**

If a powerfail occurs during the firmware update process (when the new image is actually being programmed into the FLASH EEPROMs), the tape drive’s PCBA will be rendered unusable. When performing a firmware update, take all possible precautions to prevent power failure to the tape drive.

Make sure you have a DLTtape that bears the firmware image and personality of the required revision level copied to it.

1. Put the tape drive into the firmware update mode. To do this:
  - a) Remove any cartridge in the target tape drive and close the handle (down position).
  - b) Press the UNLOAD button on the drive front panel and hold the button until the WRITE PROTECT indicator begins blinking (approximately six seconds). This indicates that the tape drive has recognized your request for firmware update mode and is waiting for the sequence to complete.

**NOTE**

If the WRITE PROTECT indicator does not blink, check that:

1. The Power-On Self Test passed.
2. The drive is unloaded.
3. The drive handle is in its down position.

- c) Release the UNLOAD button, then press the UNLOAD button again within four (4) seconds. The second press should take less than one (1) second.
  - d) The TAPE IN USE and the WRITE PROTECT indicators will blink. This indicates that the tape drive recognizes that the firmware update mode has been selected.

If you are unsuccessful in selecting the firmware update mode (if, for example, pressing the UNLOAD button the second time requires longer than one [1] second), the WRITE PROTECT indicator will stop blinking within several seconds. Try the procedure again. If the drive and controller PCBA are not communicating properly, you cannot select the firmware update function.

Once the firmware update mode has been successfully selected, insert the cartridge with updated firmware image into the drive. The drive then

- Automatically reads the cartridge. The tape will move for a few minutes performing calibration and directory processing before any data is read.
- Examines the data
- Verifies that the data is a valid firmware image for the tape drive.

At this point, the firmware update mode is automatically cleared. One of the following conditions will occur:

- If the firmware image is valid and the drive code is up-to-date, the drive code does not go through an update.
- If the firmware image is valid and the drive code is NOT up-to-date, the code in the drive is updated. This will take 2 - 3 minutes

While the drive code is being updated, the WRITE PROTECT and TAPE IN USE indicators flash alternately.

When the drive code update is complete, the drive resets, and runs its Power-On Self Test (POST). The process waits until the tape is reloaded at the beginning of tape (BOT).

If the firmware image is valid, the tape drive's PCBA controller's FLASH EEPROM is updated with the new firmware image. The WRITE PROTECT and TAPE IN USE indicators flash again during the controller firmware update.

#### **C.4 INTERPRETING THE RESULTS OF A FIRMWARE UPDATE**

Following a firmware update procedure, two possible results can occur:

- The firmware update cartridge is unloaded. This signals a successful update

The tape drive rewinds the cartridge, the door is unlocked, and the green OPERATE HANDLE indicator illuminates.

- The firmware update cartridge is NOT unloaded. This signals an unsuccessful update.

The tape drive subsystem may still be usable. Failure may be a result of:

- Power failure
- Bad firmware image on the tape
- Non-functioning FLASH EEPROMS.

Table C-2 provides troubleshooting information.

Table C-2 Results of Firmware Update

If...	Then...
The image is valid	<p>1. The FLASH EEPROM containing the current firmware is erased.</p> <p>2. The new image is programmed into FLASH EEPROM (approximately 2 minutes). Then:</p> <p>The tape drive resets</p> <p>The tape drive runs POST</p> <p>The tape drive unloads the tape cartridge and the cartridge can be removed. This indicates a successful firmware update.</p>
<p>1. The tape is NOT a valid firmware update tape</p> <p>2. The tape does not contain a valid firmware image</p>	<p>No firmware update is attempted. The WRITE PROTECT and TAPE IN USE indicators do not blink. The drive resets and the tape remains loaded to signal that the firmware update was unsuccessful.</p>
The tape contains a valid image but there is a failure when attempting to reprogram FLASH EEPROM	<p>The controller PCBA is probably unusable and should be replaced. The tape drive performs a reset and reruns POST. The front panel LEDs are in a blinking state. POST will fail if FLASH EEPROM does not contain a valid firmware image.</p>





## Appendix D

# THE TAPE CARTRIDGE

---

*This appendix covers:*

- *Tape Cartridge Handling Guidelines (subsection D.1)*
- *Tape Cartridge Inspection Procedure (subsection D.2)*
- *Tape Cartridge Write-Protect Switch (subsection D.3)*
- *Loading a Tape Cartridge (subsection D.4)*
- *Unloading a Tape Cartridge (subsection D.5)*
- *Using a Cleaning Tape Cartridge (subsection D.6)*

### D.1 TAPE CARTRIDGE HANDLING GUIDELINES

The tape drive can use one of the following types of DLTtape cartridge:

- DLTtape III, 1100 feet/cartridge (gray brown plastic)
- DLTtape IIIxt, 1800 feet/cartridge (white plastic)
- DLTtape IV, 1800 feet/cartridge (black plastic)

Ensure that your tape backup solution performs reliably by following both the general handling guidelines described in this subsection.

#### HANDLING GUIDELINES

- Always keep each tape cartridge in its protective plastic case when it is not in the tape drive.
- When carrying tape cartridges in their cases, always orient the cases so that the grooves in the cases interlock. This prevents the cases from slipping apart and falling.
- Never stack the tape cartridges in a stack of more than five.

- Always observe the proper environmental conditions for the storage of tape cartridges. Refer to the cartridge reference card supplied with each cartridge. The ambient operating environment for the tape cartridge is:

Temperature      10°C to 40°C (50°F to 104°F)

Relative Humidity    20% to 80% (non-condensing)

- If storage and/or transportation of a tape cartridge have exposed it to conditions outside the ambient values above, you should "condition" the tape cartridge to its operating environment for a 24-hour period.
- When placing tape cartridges in archival storage, make sure you stand each tape cartridge vertically.
- Do not place cartridges on or near devices that may produce magnetic fields such as computer monitors, motors, or video equipment. Such exposure can alter or erase data on the tape. Note that magnetic fields are not generally a problem since their strength decreases as inverse of the distance from the source cubed. Unless very near (within a few inches) a magnet or an electric motor there is no problem. The earth exerts a magnetic field everywhere of less than about 0.5 Oersteds. The field from a tape that is read by a recording head is about 100 Oer. To disturb the information on the tape would require a field larger than this and to erase the recorded information a field larger than the coercivity of the tape is required which would be about 2000 Oer. field strength.
- Never apply adhesive labels or POST-IT notes on the top, side, or bottom of your DLTape cartridge. Only use the user slide-in type label provided with each cartridge and slide it over the label slot on the cartridge.
- Do not carry cartridges loosely in a box or any other container. Allowing cartridges to hit together exposes them to unnecessary physical shock.
- Do not touch or allow direct contact with tape or tape leader. Dust or natural skin oils can contaminate the tape and impact tape performance.

- Do not expose the tape cartridge to moisture or direct sunlight.
- Do not insert any cartridge that has been dropped into the DLTtape drive without at least a thorough visual inspection as described in this paper. A dropped cartridge may have dislodged, loosened, or damaged internal components.
- Avoid unnecessary opening of the cartridge door; this may expose the tape to contamination or physical damage.
- Do not attempt to remove a tape cartridge from the tape drive unless the Operate Handle LED lights steadily and the drive's beeper has sounded its tone. Overriding the drive handle will cause damage to both the media and the tape drive.
- Do not use graphite pencils, water-soluble felt pens, or other debris-producing writing instruments on your labels. Never erase a label – replace it.
- Make sure you place the unused cartridge labels in the protective box so that you do not inadvertently pick them up along with the cartridge during subsequent usage. A static electricity charge on a cartridge may cause a label to cling to the cartridge. A label that is accidentally inserted into the drive along with a cartridge can prevent the hub reel and drive gear from meshing.
- Maintain clean operating, working, and storage environments.
- Follow all tape cartridge handling instructions that accompany your cartridges or tape drive.

## D.2 TAPE CARTRIDGE INSPECTION PROCEDURE

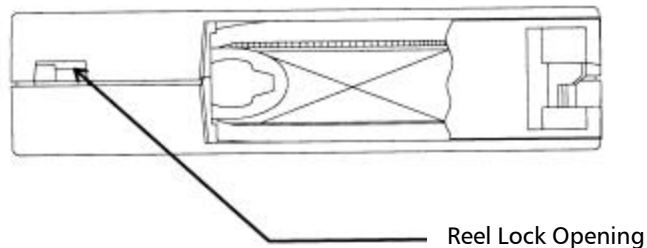
Ensure that your tape backup solution performs reliably by following the Visual Mechanical Inspection (VMI) procedures described in this subsection. These steps will help you identify any potential tape cartridge problems, and will prevent accidental loss of data or damage to your DLTtape system.

You should do a VMI:

- As a general practice whenever you change or load a new tape cartridge
- If a tape cartridge is dropped or subject to some hard physical shock
- If the DLTtape drive becomes inoperable after loading a tape cartridge
- If you receive a shipment of tape cartridges that show any sign of shipping damage.

Follow these steps to visually inspect a DLTtape cartridge:

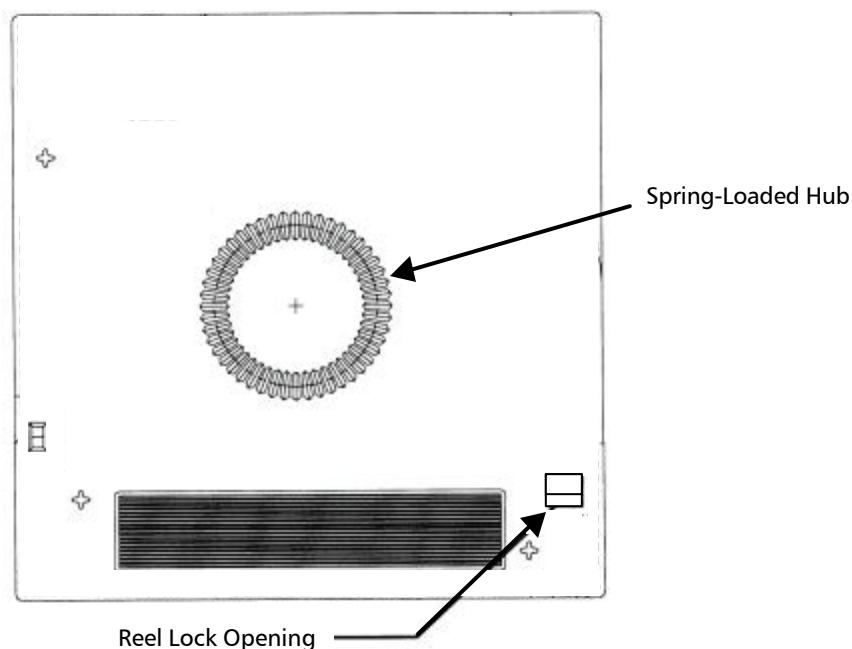
1. Remove the tape cartridge from its protective plastic case.
2. Look at the tape cartridge to check for any obvious cracks or other physical damage. Look for broken or missing parts.
3. Gently shake the tape cartridge. Listen for any rattling or sounds of any loose pieces inside the cartridge. *If you hear anything loose inside, do not use the cartridge.*
4. Hold the tape cartridge so that the end of the cartridge that is inserted into the DLTtape drive is facing you, as shown in Figure D-1. You will see that there is a small opening on the left-hand side of the tape cartridge.



*Figure D-1 Location of One of the Two Reel Lock Tabs on the DLTtape Cartridge*

Inside and near the center of this opening, you should see a small plastic tab. This is one of the reel locks. The reel locks can break if the cartridge is dropped. This may be the cause of any rattling sound you hear when you gently shake the tape cartridge. *If this reel lock tab is not visible do not use the cartridge.*

5. Look at the bottom of the tape cartridge, holding it as shown in Figure D-2.

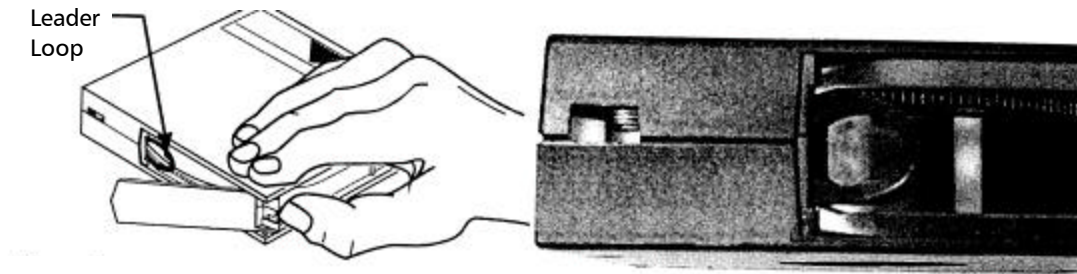


*Figure D-2 Location of Reel Lock Opening and Spring-Loaded Hub on Bottom of DLTape Cartridge*

Check the opening indicated in Figure D-2 and ensure that the small plastic tab is partially visible. This is the second reel lock. The reel locks can break if the cartridge is dropped. This may be the cause of any rattling sound you hear when you gently shake the tape cartridge. *If this reel lock tab is not visible do not use the cartridge.*

Also located on the bottom of the tape cartridge is the spring-loaded hub. Verify that the hub is centered within the circular opening in the tape cartridge. Gently press the hub and make sure that it springs back into place. Make sure that it ends up centered within its circular opening.

6. Ensure that the tape leader within the tape cartridge is in the correct position. To do this, you must open the tape cartridge door. Refer to Figure D-3.



*Figure D-3 Opening the Door on a DLTtape Cartridge Showing Tape Leader Loop in its Correct Position*

Open the door by holding the DLTtape cartridge as shown in Figure D-3.

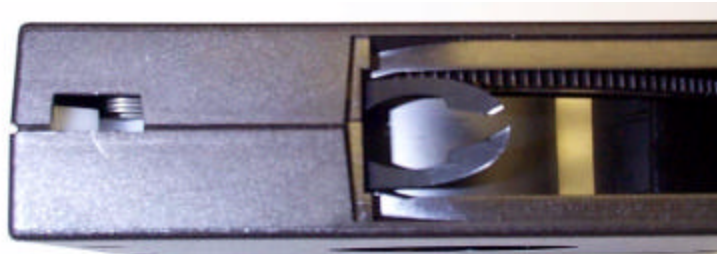
On the right side corner of the tape cartridge there is a small tab in a cut-out portion of the cartridge. Using your thumb, gently lift up on the tab and swing the door open (Figure D-3).

Inside the door, you will see the tape and cartridge leader loop. The loop should stick up about an eighth of an inch when viewed from the edge; the loop must be a closed loop. *If the loop is torn, bent, pulled in, or not sticking up about an eighth of an inch, do not use the tape cartridge.*

7. Figure D-4 shows three different tape cartridge loop problems. No tape cartridge that exhibits the problems shown in the examples in Figure D-4 should be used in a DLT tape system.



Example 1: "Swallowed" Tape Cartridge Leader



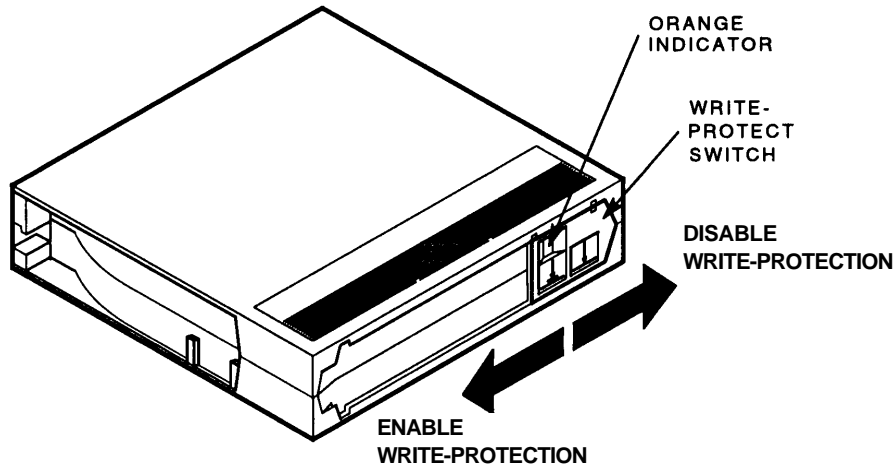
Example 2: Torn or Broken Leader Loop



Example 3: Tape is Loosely Wound

*Figure D-4 Three Examples of Tape Cartridges with Damage Visible during Visual Inspection*

8. Finally, check for proper operation of the tape cartridge's write-protect switch (Figure D-5). This sliding switch, located on the end of the tape cartridge used for the tape label, should snap smartly back and forth, and the orange tab should be visible when the tape cartridge is set to provide write protection (data on the tape cannot be written over).



ZKO-1217-04-DG

Figure D-5 Write-Protect Switch on Tape Cartridge

By following general handling procedures, conducting careful visual inspections of tape cartridges on a regular, ongoing basis, and making sure that tape cartridges are stored within their environmental limits, you will greatly reduce any chance that you will experience problems with your tape cartridges or cause damage to your DLT tape system. Respect your media as much as you do your data.

### D.3 TAPE CARTRIDGE WRITE-PROTECT SWITCH

Each tape cartridge has a write-protect switch that can be used to prevent accidental erasure of data. Before inserting the tape cartridge into the tape drive, position the write-protect switch on the front of the cartridge (Figure D-5):

- Move the write-protect switch to the left to **enable** write protection (existing data on the tape cannot be overwritten, nor can additional data be appended to the media).

When the write-protect switch is moved to the left, a small orange rectangle is visible. This indicates that data cannot be written to the tape.



- Move the write-protect switch to the right to **disable** write protection (existing data on the tape can be overwritten, and/or additional data can be appended to the media unless the cartridge is write-protected via software). When write-protect is disabled, no orange rectangle is visible.

When a tape cartridge is loaded in the drive and the tape cartridge's write-protect switch is moved to its write-protected position (to the left as you face the label/switch side of the tape cartridge), the drive turns on its write-protect indicator immediately. If the drive is currently writing to the tape, the write-protect feature does not take effect until after the current WRITE operation completes.

Table D-1 Write-Protect Switch Positions

Write-Protect Switch Position	Orange Indicator	Result
<u>Before Loading the Cartridge</u>		
Enabled (Slide switch to left)	Visible	Data cannot be written to the tape.  Existing data on the tape cannot be overwritten.  Additional data cannot be appended to the media.
Disabled (Slide switch to right)	Not visible	Unless the cartridge is write-protected via software:  Data can be written to the tape.  Existing data on the tape can be overwritten.  Additional data can be appended to the media.
<u>After Loading the Cartridge and During Operation</u>		
If the write-protect switch is moved from its right (disabled) position to its left (enabled) position.	Visible	If the drive is currently writing to tape, the write-protect feature does not take effect until AFTER the current WRITE operation completes.
If the write-protect switch is moved from its left (enabled) to its right (disabled) position.	Not visible	The tape becomes write-enabled AFTER a variable amount of seconds.

## D.4 LOADING A TAPE CARTRIDGE

Complete this subsection to load a tape cartridge into the front panel (Chapter 2, Figure 2-10) of the tape drive. Because this subsection of the manual refers to some of the front panel LEDs and controls, it may be useful to review information in chapter 2.5 that describe them.

1. Only when the green Operate Handle LED is steadily lit and when the audible beep sounds, lift the tape drive's cartridge Insert/Release handle.

If the green Operate Handle LED is blinking, close the handle and wait for the LED to light steadily, then lift the handle and insert the cartridge.

2. Insert the cartridge. Push the cartridge fully into the tape drive.

### CAUTION

To prevent failures and/or damage to the handle, assist the handle to its closed position. Do not flip it down or otherwise treat it roughly.

3. Push the handle to its closed (down) position.

The green Operate Handle LED extinguishes and the amber Tape in Use LED blinks to show that the tape is loading. When the tape reaches the BOT marker, the amber LED lights steadily. The tape is now ready for use.

## D.5 UNLOADING A TAPE CARTRIDGE

Complete this subsection to unload a tape cartridge. Because this subsection of the manual refers to some of the front panel LEDs and controls (Chapter 2, Figure 2-10) of the tape drive. Because this subsection of the manual refers to some of the front panel LEDs and controls, it may be useful to review information in chapter 2.5 that describe them.

### CAUTION

Remove the tape cartridge from the tape drive **BEFORE** turning off host power. Failure to remove a tape cartridge may result in cartridge and/or tape drive damage.

When you remove a tape cartridge from the drive, return the cartridge to its plastic case to protect the cartridge from damage. Close the Insert/Release handle.

1. Press the Unload button (or issue an appropriate system software command). The amber Tape in Use LED blinks as the tape rewinds.

### CAUTION

Do NOT rush removal of the tape cartridge: premature removal can cause tape leader failure. Wait until the Operate Handle LED lights in a steady green. Delay removing the tape cartridge for one or two seconds to ensure that the tape leader of the cartridge is in a safe position for cartridge removal.

2. When the green Operate Handle LED lights steadily and you hear the audible beep signal, lift the tape drive cartridge Insert/Release handle to its open position to eject the cartridge.
3. Remove the cartridge.
4. Push the Insert/Release handle to its closed position.

## D.6 USING A CLEANING TAPE CARTRIDGE

This subsection contains information on how and when to use a cleaning tape cartridge. Because this subsection of the manual refers to some of the front panel LEDs and controls (Chapter 2, Figure 2-10) of the tape drive. Because this subsection of the manual refers to some of the front panel LEDs and controls, it may be useful to review information in chapter 2.5 that describe them.

A cleaning cartridge has a life expectancy of approximately 20 uses.

Use Table D-2 to determine when to use a cleaning tape cartridge.

*Table D-2 When to Use a Cleaning Tape Cartridge*

<b>If:</b>	<b>It means:</b>	<b>And you should:</b>
The Use Cleaning Tape LED is lit.	The drive head needs cleaning or the tape is bad.	Use the cleaning cartridge. Follow the instructions in this chapter for loading a cartridge into the tape drive. When cleaning completes, the Use Cleaning Tape LED turns off, Operate Handle lights, and the drive's beeper sounds a tone to alert you that the cartridge can be removed from the tape drive.
A data tape cartridge causes Use Cleaning Tape LED to light even after a cleaning tape has been used.	The data cartridge may be damaged.	Back up the data from this cartridge onto another cartridge. Discard the damaged cartridge: use of a damaged cartridge may cause unnecessary use of the cleaning cartridge.
The Use Cleaning Tape LED remains lit after you have used a cleaning cartridge to clean the drive head.	Your cleaning tape cartridge may be exhausted.	Try another cleaning tape cartridge.
The Use Cleaning Cartridge LED remains lit after you have loaded the cleaning cartridge.	The drive is still looking for a good piece of cleaning tape to perform the cleaning function. Cleaning of the drive has not taken place; the cartridge has expired.	Replace the cleaning tape cartridge.

## A

---

ASC/ASCQ codes,  
    REQUEST SENSE, 5-147  
    SEND DIAGNOSTIC, 5-159  
ABORT message, 4-5  
Acoustic noise emissions, 1-9  
Altitude specification, 1-6  
ATTENTION condition, 3-24

## B

---

Beeper, 2-17, 2-21  
Bugcheck packets, B-1  
BUS DEVICE RESET message, 4-5  
BUS FREE, 3-10  
BUS PARITY ERRORS, 3-11  
Bus termination, 2-6, 2-8, 2-16, 2-26,  
    2-27

## C

---

Cables  
    connecting, 2-10  
    SCSI bus cable, 2-11  
Capacity, 1-4  
Cartridge insert/release handle, 2-17  
Cleaning tape cartridge  
    using, D-12  
COMMAND COMPLETE message, 4-5  
Command descriptor block, 5-4  
Commands  
    SCSI, 3-1, 5-13  
Configuration, 2-3  
Connectors

loader (rackmount), 2-14  
power cord (rackmount), 2-11  
SCSI (rackmount), 2-11  
tabletop, 2-15

## Controls

description, 2-17  
front panel, 2-17  
functionality, 2-20

## D

---

Data cache, 5-12  
DATA-phase command components,  
    5-8  
Density  
    LED functionality, 2-19  
    selecting, 2-21  
Density codes,  
    MODE SELECT, 5-69  
    MODE SENSE, 5-101  
Description  
    product, 1-1  
DISCONNECT message, 4-6  
DLTape recording media  
    specifications, 1-9

## E

---

EEPROM  
    Event log error codes, B-3  
    Packets (last n error events), B-1  
    Resident bugcheck packets, B-1  
    Vendor Unique Page Parameters,  
        5-86  
Electromagnetic emissions, 1-7

EMI and safety certifications, 1-8  
Environmental specifications, 1-5  
ERASE command, 5-15  
ESD protection, 2-3

---

**F**

---

Firmware update,  
    creating a tape, C-1  
    interpreting results, C-4  
    procedure, C-2  
Front panel  
    Cartridge insert/release handle, 2-17  
    controls, 2-20  
    LEDs, 2-18

---

**G**

---

Guidelines  
    for installation, 2-2  
    for tape cartridge handling, D-1

---

**H**

---

Humidity specification, 1-5

---

**I**

---

IDENTIFY message, 4-7  
INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR  
    message, 4-8  
INQUIRY command, 5-17  
Installation  
    connections, 2-10  
    rackmount, 2-8  
    setup, 2-3  
Interface type, 1-4

---

**J**

---

Jumper  
    Disable/enable parity, 2-7, 2-8  
    SCSI ID, rackmount, 2-4

SCSI ID, tabletop, 2-8  
TERMPWR rackmount, 2-6  
TERMPWR tabletop, 2-8

---

**L**

---

Last n error events page, B-1  
LEDs  
    description, 2-17  
    functionality, 2-18  
    density functionality, 2-19  
LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE,  
    4-9  
LINKED COMMAND COMPLETE  
    with flag message, 4-9  
Loading a cartridge, D-10  
LOAD UNLOAD command, 5-27  
LOCATE command, 5-31  
LOG SELECT command, 5-33  
LOG SENSE command, 5-41

---

**M**

---

Media type, 2-20, 5-98, 5-99, 5-101  
MESSAGE PARITY ERROR, 4-9  
MESSAGE REJECT, 4-9  
MODE SELECT command, 5-63  
MODE SENSE command, 5-95

---

**N**

---

Non-operating shock, 1-6  
Non-operating vibration, 1-6  
NO OPERATION message, 4-10

---

**O**

---

Operation codes, 5-1

---

**P**

---

- Parity checking
  - rackmount, 2-7
  - tabletop, 2-8
- Performance data, 1-4
- Physical specifications, 1-3
- Pin assignments
  - power, 2-14
  - SCSI differential, 2-13
  - SCSI single-ended, 2-12
- POST
  - description, 2-24
  - tape drive states following, 2-24
  - ready activity, 2-24
- Power connections
  - rackmount, 2-11
  - tabletop, 2-15
- Power-on self test
  - See POST
- Power requirements, 1-7
- PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command, 5-119
- Product description, 1-1

---

**R**

---

- READ command, 5-121
- READ BLOCK LIMITS command, 5-125
- READ BUFFER command, 5-127
- READ POSITION command, 5-131
- RECEIVE DIAGNOSTICS RESULTS command, 5-135
- Recording media, 1-10
- Reliability (projected), 1-8
- RELEASE UNIT command, 5-137
- REPORT LUNS command, 5-139
- REQUEST SENSE
  - command, 5-141
  - Supported ASC/ASCQ codes, 5-147
  - Supported Sense Keys, 5-146
- RESERVE UNIT command, 5-151

- RESTORE POINTERS message, 4-10
- REWIND command, 5-153

---

**S**

---

- Safety requirements, 2-1
- SAVE DATA POINTER message, 4-10
- SCSI
  - ANSI implemented commands, 3-1
  - ARBITRATION, 3-12
  - Attention, 3-24
  - BUS FREE, 3-10
  - Bus conditions, 3-24
  - bus phases, 3-10
  - bus signal definitions, 3-6
  - bus timing values, 3-8
  - information transfer, 3-17
  - message format, 4-1
  - overview, 3-1
  - pointers, 5-3
  - queued unit attentions, 3-26
  - RESELECTION, 3-15
  - reset, 3-25
  - SELECTION, 3-13
  - signal sources, 3-5
  - signal values, 3-4
  - supported commands, 5-1
  - supported messages, 4-5
- SCSI bus
  - terminating, 2-6, 2-16
- SCSI cable, 2-11, 2-16
- SCSI commands
  - ERASE (19h), 5-15
  - INQUIRY (12h), 5-17
  - LOAD UNLOAD (1Bh), 5-27
  - LOCATE (2Bh), 5-31
  - LOG SELECT (4Ch), 5-33
  - LOG SENSE (4Dh), 5-41
  - MODE SELECT (15h/55h), 5-63
  - MODE SENSE (1Ah/5Ah), 5-95
  - PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL (1Eh), 5-119
  - READ (08h), 5-121

- READ BLOCK LIMITS (05h), 5-125
- READ BUFFER (3Ch), 5-127
- READ POSITION (34h), 5-131
- RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS (1Ch), 5-135
- RELEASE UNIT (17h), 5-137
- REPORT LUNS (A0h), 5-139
- REQUEST SENSE (03h), 5-141
- RESERVE UNIT (16h), 5-151
- REWIND (01h), 5-153
- SEND DIAGNOSTIC (1Dh), 5-155
- SPACE (11h), 5-161
- TEST UNIT READY (00h), 5-163
- VERIFY (13h), 5-165
- WRITE (0Ah), 5-167
- WRITE BUFFER (3Bh), 5-169
- WRITE FILEMARKS (10h), 5-173
- SCSI ID
  - rackmount, 2-4
  - tabletop, 2-8
- SEND DIAGNOSTIC
  - command, 5-155
  - Supported ASC/ASCQ codes, 5-159
  - Supported Sense Keys, 5-159
- Sense keys
  - REQUEST SENSE, 5-146
  - SEND DIAGNOSTIC, 5-159
- Setup, 2-3
- Shock requirements
  - non-operating, 1-6
  - operating, 1-6
- SPACE command, 5-161
- Specifications
  - acoustic noise emissions, 1-9
  - electromagnetic emissions, 1-7
  - EMI and safety certifications, 1-8
  - environmental, 1-5
  - interface type, 1-4
  - non-operating shock, 1-6
  - non-operating vibration, 1-6
  - performance data, 1-4
  - physical, 1-3
  - power, 1-7

- recording media, 1-10
- reliability (projected), 1-8
- shock, 1-6
- storage capacity, 1-4
- tape drive recording type, 1-9
- vibration, 1-6
- Status/error reporting, 5-7
- Storage capacity, 1-4
- SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER
  - REQUEST message, 4-10

---

**T**

---

- Tape cartridge
  - guidelines for care, D-1
  - handling, D-1
  - inspecting, D-4
  - labeling, D-2, D-3
  - loading, D-10
  - storage, D-2
  - unloading, D-11
  - using cleaning tape cartridge, D-12
  - write-protect switch, D-8
- Tape drive recording type, 1-9
- Temperature specifications, 1-5
- TERMPWR,
  - rackmount, 2-6
  - tabletop, 2-8
- TEST UNIT READY command, 5-163
- Transfer rate, 1-4
- Troubleshooting, 2-25

---

**U**

---

- Unit attention condition, 5-11
- Unloading a cartridge, D-11
- Updating firmware, C-1



**V**

---

Vendor unique page parameters for  
EEPROM, 5-86

Vendor unique sense data  
request sense status codes, A-1

VERIFY command, 5-165

Vibration requirements  
non-operating, 1-6  
operating, 1-6

**W**

---

WRITE BUFFER command, 5-169

WRITE command, 5-167

WRITE FILEMARKS command, 5-173





# 81-60043-04 A02

81-60043-04 A02

**Quantum®**

501 Sycamore Drive  
Milpitas, CA 95035  
(408) 894-4000

[www.quantum.com](http://www.quantum.com)

November 10, 2003

81-60043-04 A02